THE DOCUMENT COMPANY
XEROX

Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format Copier/Printer User Guide

701P45100

Version 3.0
January 2006

Preface

Thank you for using the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format Copier/Printer User Guide (hereinafter known as 6030/6050 Wide Format).

This User Guide describes the basic operations and the detailed functions of the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format Copier, Printer, and integrated Scanner. It also includes usage precautions, safety, replenishing toner, replacing paper, troubleshooting, and other general instructions.

The explanations provided in this User Guide assume that the user has a basic knowledge of operating the computer and network configuration in use. Refer to the manuals supplied with the computer, Windows related documentation, and the manuals supplied with the network system for details on computer and network operations.

Conventions

This User Guide uses the following symbols and conventions:

< > key
Indicates the keys on the keyboard.
(Example) Press the <Enter> key.

[ ]
Indicates the menus and display items on the screens.
(Example) Select either the [On] or [Off] buttons to display [Job Name], [Owner], and [Reason] in that order.

" "
Indicates areas of reference within this User Guide.
Also indicates messages.
(Example) Refer to "3.2 Print Services".
A message stating "Additional Port Information Required. The Device could not be identified" appears.

(Important)
Indicates important information which you should read.

(Note)
Indicates additional information on operations or features.

(Refer to)
Indicates reference sources.

(Example)
Indicates examples.

Safety Notes

Read these safety notes carefully before using this product to ensure you operate the equipment safely.

Your Xerox product and recommended supplies have been designed and tested to meet strict safety requirements. These include safety agency approval, and compliance with established environmental standards. Please read the following instructions carefully before operating the product and refer to them as needed to ensure the continued safe operation of your product.
The safety and environment testing and performance of this product have been verified using Xerox materials only.

> **WARNING: Any unauthorized alteration, which may include the addition of new functions or connection of external devices, may affect the product certification. Please contact your authorized local dealer for more information**

WARNING MARKINGS

Warning Markings

All warning instructions marked on or supplied with the product should be followed.

	Warning	This WARNING alerts user to areas of the product where there is the possibility of personal injury.
	Warning	This WARNING alerts users to areas of the product where there are heated surfaces, which should not be touched.

WARNING

This product is certified manufactured and tested in compliance with strict safety and radio frequency interference regulations. Any unauthorized alteration which, includes the addition of new functions or the connection of external devices, may affect this certification. Please contact your local XEROX Limited representative for a list of approved accessories.

WARNING

In order to allow this equipment to operate in proximity to Industrial, Scientific, and Medical (ISM) equipment, the external radiation from the ISM equipment may have to be limited or special mitigation measures taken.

The Electricity at Work Regulation (in England and Wales) UK ONLY

Electricity at Work Regulations

The Electricity at Work Regulation 1989 came into force in England and Wales on the 1 April 1990. This 1989 Regulation places a duty on all employers and self-employed persons to ensure the electrical system in their premises are constructed, maintained and operated in such a manner as to prevent, so far as reasonably practical, danger. This includes ensuring all electrical equipment connected to such electrical systems are safely constructed, maintained and operated. All Xerox equipment have been designed to exacting safety standards. They have all undergone a variety of stringent safety tests including earth bond, insulation resistance and electrical strength tests. Xerox manufacturing plants have been awarded ISO 9000 quality certification and are subject to regular audits by the British Standards Institution or equivalent national standards body. Xerox equipment which has been properly and regularly serviced and maintained should not have to undergo additional specific safety tests pursuant to the 1989 Regulation. Customers wishing to complete safety testing should contact Xerox for advice prior to any test implementation. Xerox equipment should, however, be properly and regularly serviced and maintained at all times.

QUESTION: What is the Electricity at Work Regulation?

ANSWER: The Electricity at Work Regulation 1989 came into force in England and Wales on the 1 April 1990. This 1989 Regulation places a duty on all employers and self-employed persons to ensure the electrical systems in their premises are constructed, maintained and operated in such a manner as to prevent, so far as reasonably practicable, danger. This includes ensuring all electrical products connected to such electrical systems are safely constructed, maintained and operated.

QUESTION: Does Xerox comply with the Electricity at Work Regulation?

ANSWER: The regulation places a duty on all employers and self-employed persons to ensure the electrical systems in their premises are, effectively safe. The regulation does not impose on, amongst others, manufacturers or suppliers of such electrical systems. However, rest assured that all Xerox equipment which Xerox and its authorized distributors supplies to customers, conform with all the relevant safety legislation and standards.

QUESTION: Is Xerox equipment safe?

ANSWER: All Xerox equipment supplied by Xerox and their authorized distributors conform to all relevant safety legislation and standards.

QUESTION: Is the Xerox equipment in my premises safe?

ANSWER: All Xerox equipment supplied by Xerox and its authorized distributors conform to all relevant safety legislation and standards. However, like all electrical equipment, they have to be regularly serviced and maintained by competent persons. Xerox Customer Service Engineers ensure Xerox equipment is serviced and maintained to exacting Xerox safety standards. If you would like your Xerox equipment to be serviced and maintained to such high standards, please contact your local Xerox Customer Service Organization. They will be pleased to assist you.

QUESTION: Does the Xerox equipment in my premises comply with the Electricity at Work Regulations?

ANSWER: All employers and self-employed persons must ensure that the electrical systems in their premises are safe. This will include ensuring Xerox equipment in such premises is safe. Xerox Product Safety function has prepared a guide which contains a list of tests which may be completed by your Xerox Customer Service Organization.

> **Note**
> THESE TESTS MUST BE CARRIED OUT ONLY BY PERSONS WHO POSSESS THE RELEVANT SKILL, KNOWLEDGE AND EXPERIENCE TO CARRY OUT SUCH TESTS.

Please contact the Xerox Customer Service Organization for further information.

> **Note**
> THE USE OF INAPPROPRIATE TEST PROCEDURES AND TEST EQUIPMENT MAY PROVIDE MISLEADING RESULTS AND MAY CAUSE DEATH, PERSONAL INJURY AND/OR DAMAGE TO PROPERTY.

QUESTION: I would like to carry out my own safety tests on the Xerox equipment in my premises.

ANSWER: You may, of course, request such tests as you deem necessary to satisfy yourself that your Xerox equipment is safe. Your Xerox Customer Support will be pleased to advise you on such testing.

QUESTION: I require records of all tests

ANSWER: After safety testing, your Xerox Customer Service Engineer will provide you with a certificate which details the results of all tests completed. In the event of any defect being noted, the Xerox equipment will be switched off and disconnected from the supply until the defect has been corrected. You will be advised of such action to enable such defects to be corrected.

> **Note**
> PLEASE NOTE: YOU MUST ENSURE THAT YOUR XEROX EQUIPMENT IS SAFE AT ALL TIMES

Electrical Supply

This product shall be operated from the type of electrical supply indicted on the product 's data plate label. If you are not sure that your electrical supply meets the requirements, please consult your local power company for advice.

WARNING

⏚ **This product must be connected to a protective earth circuit.**

This product is supplied with a plug that has a protective earth pin. This plug will fit only into an earthed electrical outlet. This is a safety feature. To avoid risk of electric shock, contact your electrician to replace the electrical outlet if you are unable to insert the plug into it. Never use an earthed adapter plug to connect the product to an electrical outlet that lacks an earth connection terminal.

Operator Accessible Areas

This equipment has been designed to restrict operator access to safe areas only. Operator access to hazardous areas is restricted with covers or guards, which would require a tool to remove. Never remove these covers or guards.

Maintenance

Any operator product maintenance procedures will be described in the user documentation supplied with the product. Do not to carry out any maintenance on this product, which is not described in the customer documentation.

Cleaning Your Product

Before cleaning this product, unplug the product from the electrical outlet. Always use materials specifically designated for this product; the use of other materials may result in poor performance and may create a hazardous situation. Do not use aerosol cleaners; they may be explosive and flammable under certain circumstances.

WARNING - Electrical Safety Information

CAUTION

Ensure that the power connection for your machine satisfies these requirements

- Use only the power cord supplied with this equipment.
- The socket outlet shall be installed near the equipment and shall be easily accessible.
- Plug the power cord directly into a grounded electrical outlet. Do not use an extension cord. If you do not know whether or not an outlet is grounded, consult a qualified electrician.
- This equipment is to be used on a dedicated 20A, 208-240 Vac 60Hz circuit or 16A, 220-240 Vac 50Hz circuit. The equipment must be connected to a grounded main outlet. If this machine needs to be moved to a different location, contact a Xerox service representative or your authorized local representative or service support organization.
- Improper connection of the equipment-grounding conductor can result in electrical shock.

- Do not place this equipment where people might step on or trip on the power cord.
- Do not place objects on the power cord.
- Do not override or disable electrical or mechanical interlocks.
- Do not obstruct the ventilation openings.
- Never push objects of any kind into slots or openings on this equipment.

Emergency Power Off

If any of the following conditions occur, switch off the power to the machine immediately and disconnect the power cord from the electrical outlet. Call an authorized local service representative to correct the problem.

- The equipment emits unusual noise or odors.
- The power cord is damaged or frayed.
- A wall panel circuit breaker, fuse, or other safety device has been tripped.
- Liquid is spilled into the copier/printer.
- The equipment is exposed to water.
- Any part of the equipment is damaged.

Note

The only method to remove all power from the machine is to disconnect the power cord plug from the electrical outlet.

Disconnect Device

The power cable is the disconnect device for this equipment. It is attached to the back of the machine as a plug-in device. To remove all electrical power from the equipment, disconnect the power cable from the electrical outlet.

Operational Safety Information

Xerox equipment and supplies have been designed and tested to meet strict safety requirements. These include safety agency examination, approval and compliance with established environmental standards. To ensure the continued safe operation of your Xerox/Fuji Xerox equipment, follow these safety guidelines at all times.

Do These:

- Always connect equipment to a correctly grounded power outlet. If in doubt, have the outlet checked by a qualified electrician.
- Always locate the machine on a solid support surface (not on plush carpet) that has adequate strength to support the weight of the machine.
- This equipment must be connected to a protective earth circuit.

This equipment is supplied with a plug that has a protective earth pin. This plug will fit only into an earthed electrical outlet. This is a safety feature. To avoid risk of electric shock, contact your electrician to replace the electrical outlet if you are unable to insert the plug into it. Never use a plug that lacks an earth connection terminal to connect the product to an electrical outlet.

- Always follow all warnings and instructions that are marked on or supplied with the equipment.
- Always exercise care when moving or relocating equipment. Please contact your local Xerox/Fuji Xerox Service Department, or your local support organization to arrange relocation of the product to a location outside of your building.
- Always locate the equipment in an area that has adequate ventilation, and the room for servicing. See the Install guide for minimum dimensions.
- Always use materials and supplies specifically designed for your Xerox/Fuji Xerox equipment. Use of unsuitable materials may result in poor performance.
- Always unplug this equipment from the electrical outlet before cleaning.

Do Not Do These:

- Never use a plug that lacks an earth connection terminal to connect the product to an electrical outlet.
- Never attempt any maintenance function that is not specifically described in this documentation.
- This equipment should not be placed in a built-in installation unless proper ventilation is provided, please contact your Authorized local dealer for further information.

- Never remove covers or guards that are fastened with screws. There are no operator serviceable areas within these covers.
- Never locate the equipment near a radiator or any other heat source.
- Never push objects of any kind into the ventilation openings.
- Never override or "cheat" any of the electrical or mechanical interlock devices.
- Never operate the equipment if you notice unusual noises or odors. Disconnect the power cord from the electrical outlet and contact your local Xerox/Fuji Xerox Service Representative or Service Provider immediately.

Maintenance Information

Do not attempt any maintenance procedure that is not specifically described in the documentation that is supplied with your copier/printer.

- Do not use aerosol cleaners. The use of cleaners that are not approved may cause poor performance of the equipment, and could create a dangerous condition.
- Use supplies and cleaning materials only as directed in this manual. Keep all of these materials out of the reach of children.
- Do not remove covers or guards that are fastened with screws. There are no parts behind these covers that you can maintain or service.
- Do not perform any maintenance procedures unless you have been trained to do them by an authorized local dealer or unless a procedure is specifically described in the user manuals.

Ozone Safety Information

This product will produce ozone during normal operation. The ozone produced is heavier than air and is dependent on copy volume. Providing the correct environmental parameters as specified in the Xerox installation procedure will ensure that the concentration levels meet safe limits.

If you need additional information about ozone, please request the Xerox publication Ozone by calling 1-800-828-6571 in the United States and Canada. In other markets please contact your authorized local dealer or Service Provider.

For Consumables

Store all consumables in accordance with the instructions given on the package or container.

- Keep all consumables away from the reach of children.
- Never throw toner, toner cartridges, or toner containers into an open flame.

Radio Frequency Emissions

United States, Canada, Europe, Australia/ New Zealand

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Changes and modifications to this equipment not specifically approved by Xerox/ Fuji Xerox may void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Shielded interface cables must be used with this equipment to maintain compliance with FCC regulations in the United States and the Radio Communications Act 1992 in Australia/New Zealand as applicable.

Canadian EME

This Class "A" digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe "A" est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Product Safety Certification

This product is certified by the following Agencies using the Safety standards listed.

Agency	Standard
TUV Rheinland of North America, Inc.	UL60950:2000 (USA)
	Can/CSA-c22.2 No. 60950-00 (Canada)
TUV Rheinland Japan Ltd.	IEC60950:1999

Regulatory Information

CE Mark

The CE mark applied to this product symbolizes Xerox's declaration of conformity with the following applicable Directives of the European Union as of the dates indicated:

January 1, 1995: Council Directive 72/23/EEC amended by Council directive 93/68/EEC, approximation of the laws of the member states related to low voltage equipment.
January 1, 1996: Council directive 89/336/EEC, approximation of the laws of the member states related to electromagnetic compatibility.
March 9, 1999: Council Directive 99/5/EC, on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment and the mutual recognition of their conformity.
A full declaration of conformity, defining the relevant directives and referenced standards, can be obtained from your Authorized local dealer.

WARNING: In order to allow this equipment to operate in proximity to Industrial Scientific and Medical (ISM) equipment, the external radiation from the ISM equipment may have to be limited or special mitigation measures taken.

WARNING: This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment the product may cause radio frequency interference, in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

WARNING: Shielded interface cables must be used with this product to maintain compliance with Council Directive 89/336/EEC.

Environmental Compliance

USA - Energy Star

As an ENERGY STAR partner, Xerox Corporation/Fuji Xerox has determined that (the basic configuration of) this product meets the ENERGY STAR guidelines for energy efficiency.

The ENERGY STAR and ENERGY STAR MARK are registered United States trademarks.

The ENERGY STAR Office Equipment Program is a team effort between U.S., European Union and Japanese governments, and the office equipment industry to promote energy-efficient copiers, printers, fax, multifunction machine, personal computers, and monitors. Reducing product energy consumption helps combat smog, acid rain and long-term changes to the climate by decreasing the emissions that result from generating electricity.

Xerox ENERGY STAR equipment is preset at the factory to enter a "low power" state and/or shut off completely after a specified period of use. These energy-saving features can reduce product energy consumption in half when compared to conventional equipment.

Canada - Environmental Choice

Terra Choice Environmental Services, Inc. of Canada has verified that this product conforms to all applicable Environmental Choice EcoLogo requirements for minimized impact to the environment.

As a participant in the Environmental Choice program, Xerox Corporation has determined that this product meets the Environmental Choice guidelines for energy efficiency.

Environment Canada established the Environmental Choice program in 1988 to help consumers identify environmentally responsible products and services. Copier, printer, digital press and fax products must meet energy efficiency and emissions criteria, and exhibit compatibility with recycled supplies. Currently, Environmental Choice has more than 1,600 approved products and 140 licensees. Xerox has been a leader in offering EcoLogo approved products.

Product Recycling and Disposal

USA

Xerox operates a world wide equipment take back and reuse/recycle program. Contact your Xerox Sales Representative (1-800-ASK-XEROX) to determine whether this Xerox product is part of the program. For more information about Xerox environmental programs, visit www.xerox.com/environment.

If you are managing the disposal of your Xerox product, please note that the product contains lead, mercury and other materials whose disposal may be regulated due to environmental considerations. The presence of lead and mercury is fully consistent with global regulations applicable at the time that the product was placed on the market. For recycling and disposal information, contact your local authorities. In the United States, you may also refer to the Electronic Industries Alliance web site: www.eiae.org.

Illegal Copies and Printouts

USA

Congress, by statute, has forbidden the reproduction of the following subjects under certain circumstances. Penalties of fine or imprisonment may be imposed on those guilty of making such reproductions.

1. Obligations or Securities of the United States Government, such as:

Certificates of Indebtedness	National Bank Currency
Coupons from Bonds	Federal Reserve Bank Notes
Silver Certificates	Gold Certificates
United States Bonds	Treasury Notes
Federal Reserve Notes	Fractional Notes
Certificates of Deposit	Paper Money

Bonds and Obligations of certain agencies of the government, such as FHA, etc.

Bonds. (U.S. Savings Bonds may be photographed only for publicity purposes in connection with the campaign for the sale of such bonds.)

Internal Revenue Stamps. (If it is necessary to reproduce a legal document on which there is a canceled revenue stamp, this may be done provided the reproduction of the document is performed for lawful purposes.)

Postage Stamps, canceled or uncanceled. (For philatelic purposes, Postage Stamps may be photographed, provided the reproduction is in black and white and is less than 75% or more than 150% of the linear dimensions of the original.)

Postal money Orders.

Bills, Checks, or Draft of money drawn by or upon authorized officers of the United States.

1. Stamps and other representatives of value, of whatever denomination, which have been or may be issued under any Act of Congress.

2. Adjusted Compensation Certificates for Veterans of the World Wars.

3. Obligations or Securities of any Foreign Government, Bank, or Corporation.

4. Copyrighted materials, unless permission of the copyright owner has been obtained or the reproduction falls within the "fair use" or library reproduction rights provisions of the copyright law. Further information of these provisions may be obtained from the Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20559. Ask for Circular R21.

5. Certificates of Citizenship or Naturalization. (Foreign Naturalization Certificates may be photographed.)

6. Passports. (Foreign Passports may be photographed.)

7. Immigration Papers.

8. Draft Registration Cards.

9. Selective Service Induction Papers that bear any of the following Registrant's information:

Earnings or Income	Dependency Status
Court Record	Previous military service
Physical or mental condition	

Exception: United States military discharge certificates may be photographed.

10. Badges, Identification Cards, Passes, or Insignia carried by military personnel, or by members of the various Federal Departments, such as FBI, Treasury, etc. (unless photograph is ordered by the head or such department or bureau.)

Reproducing the following is also prohibited in certain states:

Automobile Licenses - Drivers' Licenses - Automobile Certificates of Title.

The above list is not all-inclusive, and no liability is assumed for its completeness or accuracy. In case of doubt, consult your attorney.

Canada

Parliament, by statute, has forbidden the reproduction of the following subjects under certain circumstances. Penalties of fine or imprisonment may be imposed on those guilty of making such reproductions.

1. Current bank notes or current paper money.

2. Obligations or securities of a government or bank.

3. Exchequer bill paper or revenue paper.

4. The public seal of Canada or of a province, or the seal of a public body or authority in Canada, or of a court of law.

5. Proclamations, orders, regulations or appointments, or notices thereof (with intent to falsely cause same to purport to have been printed by the Queen's Printer for Canada, or the equivalent printer for a province).

6. Marks, brands, seals, wrappers or designs used by or on behalf of the Government of Canada or of a province, the government of a state other than Canada or a department, board, Commission or agency established by the Government of Canada or of a province or of a government of a state other than Canada.

7. Impressed or adhesive stamps used for the purpose of revenue by the Government of Canada or of a province or by the government of a state other than Canada.

8. Documents, registers or records kept by public officials charged with the duty of making or issuing certified copies thereof, where the copy falsely purports to be a certified copy thereof.

9. Copyrighted material or trademarks of any manner or kind without the consent of the copyright or trademark owner.

The above list is provided for your convenience and assistance, but it is not all-inclusive, and no liability is assumed for its completeness accuracy. In case of doubt, consult your solicitor.

Other Countries

Copying certain documents may be illegal in your country. Penalties of fine or imprisonment may be imposed on those found guilty of making such reproductions.

- Currency notes

- Bank notes and cheques

- Bank and government bonds and securities

- Passports and identification cards

- Copyright material or trademarks without the consent of the owner

- Postage stamps and other negotiable instruments

This list is not inclusive and no liability is assumed for either its completeness or accuracy. In case of doubt, contact your legal counsel.

Safety Extra Low Voltage Approval

These Xerox Digital Copiers/Printers are in compliance with various governmental agencies and national safety regulations. All system ports meet the requirements for Safety Extra Low Voltage (SELV) circuits for connection to customer-owned devices and networks. Additions of customer-owned or third-party accessories that are attached to these printers/copiers must meet or exceed the requirements previously listed. All modules that require external connection must be installed per Xerox installation procedures.

Table of Contents

Chapter 3   Copy Features

Chapter 4   Stored Jobs

Chapter 8   Printer Setup

Chapter 9   Logical Printer Setup and Operation

Chapter 10 Additional Operations from the Printer Menu

Chapter 11 Ethernet Print Service (for UNIX)

Chapter 12 Maintenance

Chapter 13 Problem Solving

Chapter 14 Specifications

Chapter 1

Product Overview

1.1 Product Configurations

The following product configurations and options are available for the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format Printer and the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format Copier/Printer.

Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format Printer

This unit is a printer only. Refer to the printer sections of this guide for information about its setup, features, and usage.

Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format Printer

Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format Copier/Printer

This unit features copier functionality through an integrated scanner and copier control panel, plus the ability to receive and print jobs submitted to it from remote workstations.

Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format Copier/Printer

Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format Printer with Scan System

This unit features copier and printer functionality, plus the Synergix® Scanner and the AccXES® Controller.
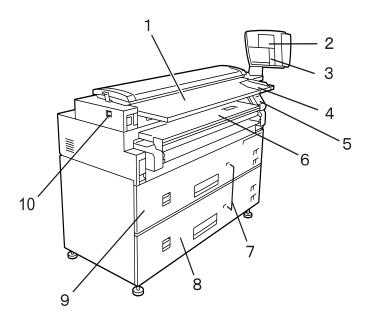
Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format Printer with Scan System

Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format Options
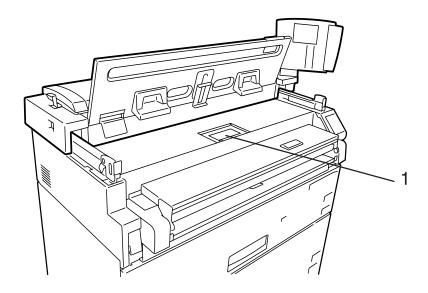
You may acquire additional hardware and software options for all units. Contact your Xerox Sales Representative to obtain additional information on options.

1.2 Major Components
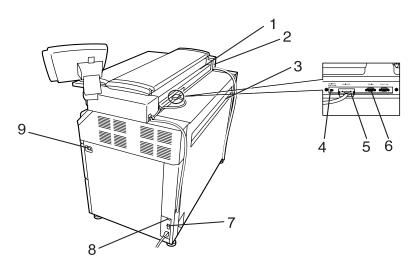
Major Components: Front

	Name	Function
1	Document table	Documents to be scanned are inserted here.
2	Setup screen (touch screen)	Used to set up copy jobs, map originals to the installed media, display messages and procedures, and provide troubleshooting help, e.g., for jam clearance.
3	Control panel	Contains a numeric keypad, Start/Stop buttons, and selection buttons for copy setups.
4	Document insertion guide	Helps the user align the edge of a document when feeding it into the scanner.
5	Printer control panel	Used to change the media size and type, set up printing and communication parameters, etc.
6	MSI*/Manual Feed Unit (*Multi Sheet Inserter) (optional)	Used for printing or copying on cut sheet media.
7	Feeder LED	Illuminates red when the media tray is in use.
8	Media tray (6050 only)	A dual-roll media tray that feeds roll paper.
9	Media tray (Standard)	A dual-roll media tray that feeds roll paper.
10	Scanner power switch	Switches the power to the scanner on and off.

	Name	Function
1	Toner supply port	The toner is refilled through this port.

Major Components: Rear

	Name	Function
1	Document ejection port	Documents exit the scanner from this location.
2	Power outlet socket	Not available
3	Print ejection port	Fused copies and prints exit the machine from this location.
4	Remote switch	A selector switch that enables the user to switch the power to both the scanner and the printer on and off from the Main Power Switch.

	Name	Function
5	Interface connector	The connector to which the printer is connected.
6	Serial port connector	Used by the service representative for maintenance.
7	Circuit Breaker Switch	Provides circuit breaker protection for the Copier/ Printer or Printer.
8	Paper Heater Switch	Switches the paper heaters on and off.
9	Main Power Switch	Switches the printer power on and off (if the Circuit Breaker Switch is already switched on).

Important *Connections to the host computer and other necessary connections will be taken care of by your service representative.*

1.3 Power On/Off

The scanner and the printer are each equipped with a power switch. The Circuit Breaker Switch must be in the ON position to switch the printer and scanner power on and off. No power is consumed when the Circuit Breaker Switch is in the OFF position, even though the power plug is connected to the power source.
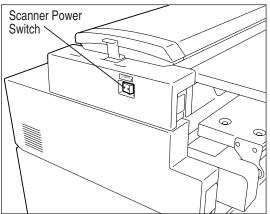
Powering On

1 Set the Remote Switch to [Connect].
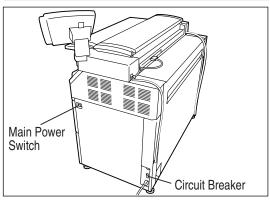
(Note) *When the Remote Switch is set to [Connect], and the Scanner Power Switch is set to ON, the Main Power Switch controls power to both the Printer and the Scanner.*

2 Switch ON the Scanner Power Switch.

Scanner Power Switch

3 Switch ON the Circuit Breaker Switch.

4 Switch ON the Main Power Switch.

Main Power Switch

Circuit Breaker
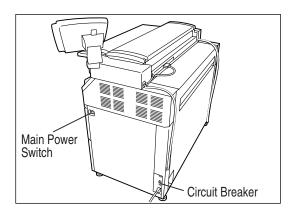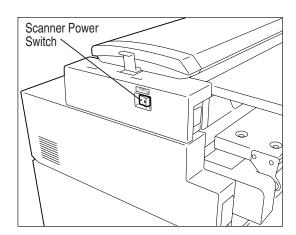
Powering Off

Switch off the power following the steps below.

⚠ *Never switch off the power while the machine is printing. Failure to observe this precaution may result in paper jams in the high-temperature areas of the printer.*

1 Switch OFF the Main Power Switch.

(Note) *When the remote switch is set to [Connect], and the Scanner Power Switch is set to ON, the power to the Printer and Scanner can be switched on and off with the Main Power Switch.*

2 Switch OFF the Scanner Power Switch.

(Note) *Switch off the Circuit Breaker Switch if the machine will not be used for a long period of time.*

3 Switch the Circuit Breaker Switch to the OFF position.

1.4 Power Save Mode

The Power Save Mode automatically lowers the power consumption of the machine by reducing the fuser power. The machine will enter the power save mode when no prints or copies have been made for a preset period of time.

- Low power mode 1
  This mode reduces the temperature of the fuser, thereby reducing power consumption. The parameters that can be set up are [ON], [OFF], and the time that must elapse before the mode activates (1 to 120 minutes; the default setting is
  [5 minutes].)

- Low power mode 2
  This mode reduces the temperature of the fuser more than Low power mode 1.
  The parameters that can be set up are [ON], [OFF], and the time that must elapse before the mode activates (5 to 120 minutes; the default setting is [15 minutes].)

- Sleep Mode
  The sleep mode automatically switches off the power to the printer. The parameters that can be set up are [ON], [OFF], and the time that must elapse before the mode activates (15 to 120 minutes; the default setting is [90 minutes].)

Power is restored to normal levels when a print job is received by the printer, and when the <Power Saver> key on the printer control panel is pressed.
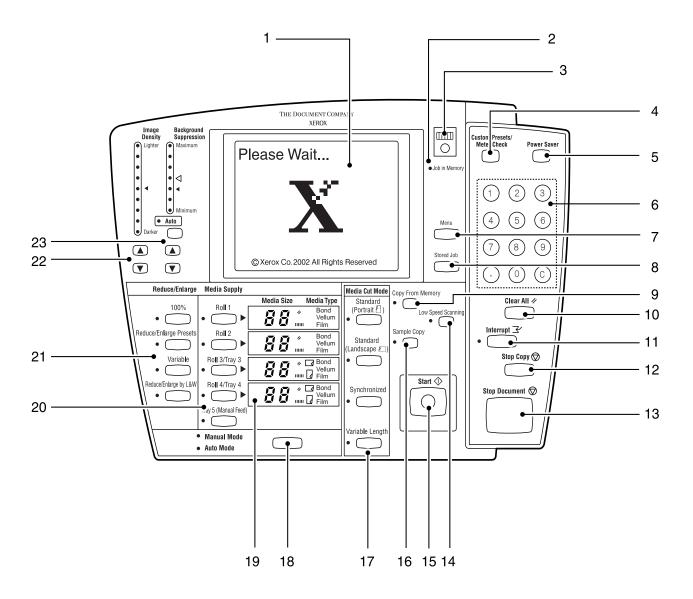
The Power Save Mode settings can be accessed and changed using either the <Custom Presets/Meter Check> key on the copier control panel, or the setup menu on the printer control panel.

(Refer to) *Refer to the " Timer" discussion in section "5.2 Setting up the System Presets" for assistance in changing the power save mode settings from the copier control panel. Refer to "8.4 System Parameter Setup (Printer Control Panel)" for changing the power save mode settings from the printer control panel.*

1.5 Copier Control Panel

The copier control panel consists of buttons, lamps, and a touch panel that displays menu and setup screens. Touch the required buttons on the screens to select features. The screen also will display messages relating to machine status, and step-by-step instructions for performing various procedures.

No.	Name	Function
1	Menu Screen or (Setup Screen)	Used to set up copy jobs, map original sizes to the media, display messages and procedures, and provide troubleshooting help, e.g., for jam clearance.
2	[Job in Memory] lamp	Illuminates for a preset period while the previous copy job is retained in memory. Enables the user to reprint the previous copy job without rescanning the original(s).
3	Screen Contrast Dial	Adjusts the contrast of the touch screen.
4	<Custom Presets/Meter Check> key	Provides access to the machine's default settings. Also enables the user to view the billing meters, software versions, machine configuration, etc.
5	<Power Saver> key	Switches the machine into and out of the low power mode.
6	Keypad (0 to 9, C)	Enables the user to enter the copy quantity and setting values. Pressing the <C> key clears all entered values.
7	<Menu> key	Currently not supported.
8	<Stored Job> key	Saves copy job settings in memory so they can be recalled and the stored jobs run again.
9	<Copy From Memory> key	Reprints the most recent copy job. The lamp illuminates when copies are printed from memory.
10	<Clear All> key	Cancels the current job settings and returns them to the default values.
11	<Interrupt> key	Enables the user to interrupt a copy job to perform a higher priority job. The lamp on the left side illuminates during interruption copying.
12	<Stop Copy> key	Ejects all copies currently in process and stops the machine.
13	<Stop Document> key	Immediately stops document feed.
14	<Low Speed Scanning> key	Used to prevent damage to fragile originals. Press this key to enter the low-speed scan mode. The lamp on the left side will illuminate during low-speed scanning.
15	<Start> key	Starts document scanning when the scanner is set to the manual start mode, when copying from memory, and when making sample copies.
16	<Sample Copy> key	Enables the user to try out different copy settings to determine which provide the best copy quality. The lamp on the left side illuminates during sample copying.
17	<Media Cut Mode> keys	Selects the method for cutting media. The lamp on the left side of the selected cut mode will illuminate.

No.	Name	Function
18	Manual/Auto key	Switches between the automatic and the manual copying modes.
19	[Media Size/Media Type] screen	Displays the size and type of the roll media in the tray(s).
20	<Media Supply> keys	Select the media supply to be used for a copy job. The lamp on the left side of the selected tray illuminates.
21	<Reduce/Enlarge> keys	Set up the percentage of reduction or enlargement at which the copies will be printed. The lamp on the left side of the selected percentage illuminates.
22	<Image Density> keys	Adjusts the density (lightness or darkness) of the copy. The <▲> key decreases the density; the <▼> key increases the density.
23	<Background Suppression> keys	Remove unwanted background noise or gray tint from copies. The <▲> key increases the strength of suppression; the <▼> key decreases it.

Setup Screens

This section explains the features of the setup screens.

Tab — Number of copies

Message area —

Ready to copy.

Set 1

Default value check —

☐ Auto-Mode | ☐ Document Image Type | ☐ Sharpness | Other Functions..

Document Size

	A0	A1	A2	A3	A4
	A0	A0	A0	A0	A0
	A1	A1	A1	A1	A1
Paper Size	A2	A2	A2	A2	A2
	A3	A3	A3	A3	A3
	A4	A4	A4	A4	A4

Message area

Displays messages which show the status of the machine. Also provides information to help the user perform tasks.

Default value check
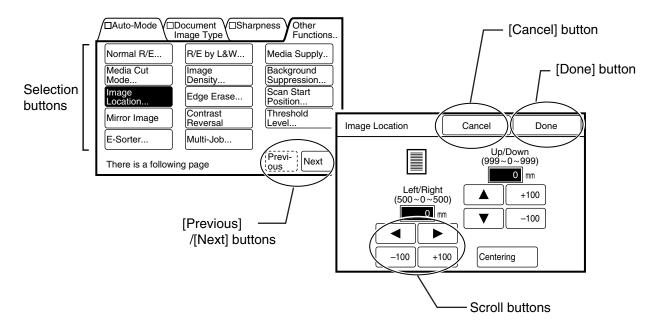
A check will display in this box if the selected features or functions differ from the default values.

Tabs

Press the tabs to switch between the setup screens. Press the [Other Functions] tab to display additional features and functions.

Number of copies (copy quantity)

The copy quantity is entered by pressing the <0> to <9> keys on the numeric keypad. Press the <C> key to return the setting to <1>.

Selection buttons

> Press these buttons to select features or functions. The buttons will highlight (darken) when selected. When a button's name ends with an ellipsis [...], such as the [Image Location...] button, another setup screen will display when this button is selected.

[Previous]/[Next] buttons

> The [Previous] and [Next] enable you to navigate between multiple setup screens.

[Done] button

> Pressing the [Done] button informs the machine's controller of your selection(s) and closes the screen.

[Cancel] button

> Cancels the selected setting or function and closes the screen.

Scroll buttons

> The [▼], [▲], [▶], and [◀] buttons increase or decrease the values assigned to different settings. Pressing a button that displays a value, [100] for example, will increase or decrease the setting by that amount.
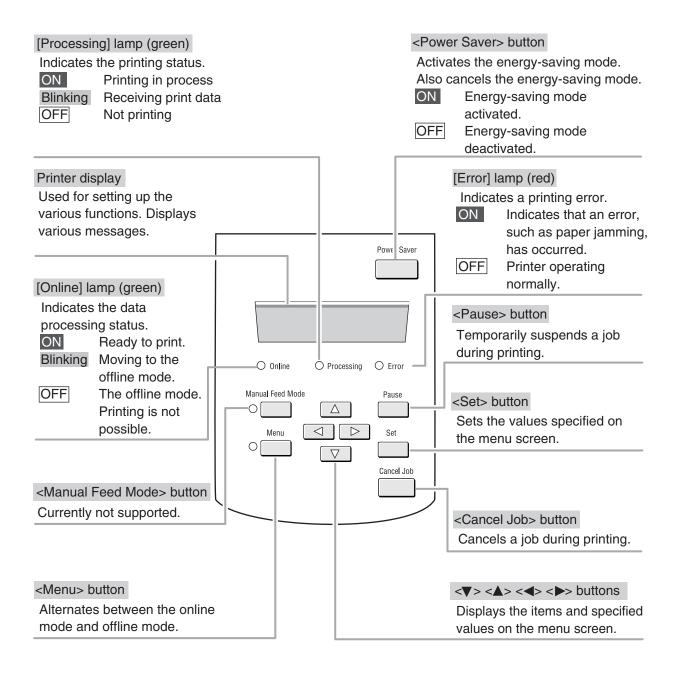
1.6 Printer Control Panel Overview

Both the Printer and the Copier/Printer versions of the 6030/6050 Wide Format are equipped with a printer control panel. This section provides an overview of this device.

Important *Refer to section "7.2 Printer Control Panel Usage" and "Chapter 10 Additional Operations from the Printer Menu" for detailed explanations of the use of the printer control panel.*

Note *It is seldom necessary to use the printer control panel on the 6030/6050 Wide Format Copier/Printer because the same settings usually can be made using either the copier control panel or Print Services on Web, the built-in web interface.*

[Processing] lamp (green)
Indicates the printing status.
ON	Printing in process
Blinking	Receiving print data
OFF	Not printing

<Power Saver> button
Activates the energy-saving mode.
Also cancels the energy-saving mode.
| ON | Energy-saving mode activated. |
| OFF | Energy-saving mode deactivated. |

Printer display
Used for setting up the various functions. Displays various messages.

[Error] lamp (red)
Indicates a printing error.
| ON | Indicates that an error, such as paper jamming, has occurred. |
| OFF | Printer operating normally. |

[Online] lamp (green)
Indicates the data processing status.
ON	Ready to print.
Blinking	Moving to the offline mode.
OFF	The offline mode. Printing is not possible.

<Pause> button
Temporarily suspends a job during printing.

<Set> button
Sets the values specified on the menu screen.

Power Saver

○ Online　　○ Processing　　○ Error

Manual Feed Mode　　△　　Pause

Menu　　◁　　▷　　Set

▽　　Cancel Job

<Manual Feed Mode> button
Currently not supported.

<Cancel Job> button
Cancels a job during printing.

<Menu> button
Alternates between the online mode and offline mode.

<▼> <▲> <◀> <▶> buttons
Displays the items and specified values on the menu screen.

1.7 Print Services on Web Overview

Print Services on Web is web server software which is pre-installed in the 6030/
6050 Wide Format Printer and Copier/Printer. Print Services on Web provides a
user-friendly way to perform printer setup, communication (port) setup, job and
error log management, and other procedures via a web browser. Print Services
on Web also enables the user to perform operations which can not be performed
from the printer control panel, for example, displaying job lists and changing job
priority.

(Refer to) *Refer to the topic " Starting and Exiting Print Services on Web" in "7.3 Print Services*
on Web" to learn how to log on to Print Services on Web.

Operating Modes

User Mode

The user mode interface (user page) is shown in the image below. This page displays immediately after a user logs on to Print Services on Web. The selections on the tabs enable the user to do the following.

[Job and Log] tab	Check the status of a print job.
	View and print a job log.
[Status tab]	Check the status of the Printer or Copier/Printer.
	Start a print job.
[Print Setup] tab	View the logical printer settings.

Refer to *Refer to section "1.8 Logical Printers Overview" to learn more about logical printers.*

Administrator Mode

To enter the administrator mode, log on to Print Services on Web, select the [Administrator page] button, and then enter the administrator login and password when prompted to do so. The administrator page displays two additional tabs, [Properties] and [Tools], and expands the capabilities of the [Job and Log], [Status], and [Print Setup] tabs.
The selections on the Administrator page tabs enable the administrator to perform the tasks listed below.

[Job and Log] tab	• Check the status of jobs in the print queue. • View and print the job log and the error log. • Cancel a print job. • Change the priority of a print job.
[Status tab]	• Check the status of the Printer or Copier/Printer. • Stop and start print services (job reception and printing). • Stop and start job reception from client computers. • Stop and resume print jobs.
[Print Setup] tab	• Set up new logical printers for each of the allowable data formats (HP-GL, TIFF, CALS, VERSATEC, PS/PDF). • Edit the settings of existing logical printers.
[Properties] tab	• View and change the machine configuration. • View and change communications configurations. • Manage ftp users.
[Tools] tab	• Print a test pattern to verify machine (printer) operation. • Print a Diagnostic Report.
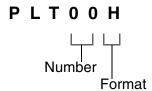
1.8 Logical Printers Overview

A logical printer (virtual printer) is a group of saved print job settings for a particular data format, i.e., HP-GL, Versatec, TIFF, CALS, and PS/PDF. These saved settings, which are created using Print Services on Web, may include pen attributes, media type, print quantity, and the other parameters that define the print job that the logical printer will be required to perform. Logical printers are to printing as Stored Jobs are to copying, that is, both reduce setup time and increase efficiency by using previously saved job settings. A maximum of one hundred logical printers can be set up within one 6030/6050 Wide Format Printer or Copier/Printer for each supported data format.

(Refer to) *Refer to "Chapter 9 Logical Printer Setup and Operation" to learn how to set up logical printers.*

How Logical Printers are Named

P L T 0 0 H

Number

Format

Logical printer names are assigned based on the following. This naming structure can not be changed.

1st to 3rd digits	[PLT] or [plt] character strings
4th to 5th digits (number)	Two-digit number from 00 to 99
6th digit (data format)	Any of the following.
	H: HP-GL format
	V: Versatec format
	T: TIFF format
	C: CALS format
	A: PS/PDF format (optional)

1.9 Using Originals

This section describes the types of originals that can be scanned and how to scan them.

Usable Originals

Maximum width:	36 inches (914.4 mm)
Minimum width:	7.16 inches (182 mm)
Maximum length:	49.2 feet (15,000 mm/15 m)
Minimum length:	8.26 inches (210 mm/A4 width)
Thickness:	2.5 mm or less for flat, opaque and translucent paper.

Use the Document Carrier for These Originals

Use the document carrier (optional)when making copies of the following.

- Originals that are badly wrinkled
- Originals that are badly curled
- Originals that are perforated, creased, or have tears
- Originals to which tape has been adhered
- Originals that are stapled together
- Originals with holes that exceed 25 mm in size
- Originals to which glue or adhesive tape has been applied

Loading Originals in the Scanner
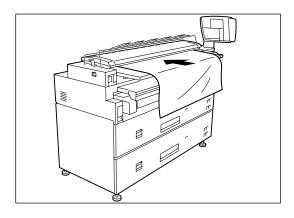
This section explains how to load originals in the scanner.

- Scanning will begin automatically if the [How to Start Scanning] parameter is set to [Auto start] in the Custom Presets.

  (Refer to) *Refer to section "5.2 Setting up the System Presets" in "Chapter 5 Custom Presets/ Meter Check" for more information about setting up the [How to Start Scanning] function.*

- The scanning speed will differ based on the reduction and enlargement settings.

- Blank copies may print if the <Stop Document> key is pressed during scanning.

- Long documents (originals up to 15 m in length) can be scanned. Scanning may stop if the document length exceeds 15 m.

- A document jam may occur if pressure is applied to the top of the document or if it is pulled during scanning.

- When scanning originals that contain holes, insert the original so that the area with the holes feeds in last. Jams may occur if the area with the holes feeds in first.

Procedure

1 Place the side of the original that is to be scanned face down. Align the edge of the original with the document insertion guide.

(Note) *To prevent edge damage when scanning a delicate original, move the document insertion guide all the way to the right, and align the right edge of the original with the marking on the document table, not the document insertion guide.*

2 Gently push the front (lead) edge of the document into the scanner. Immediately after you hear the document feed motor start, the document will feed a short distance into the scanner and stop.

(Important) *Continue to support the document until the lead edge is held by the feed rollers. The document may jam if it is released too soon.*
Attempting to correct document misalignment during a scan may cause a jam.

3 The scanned original will eject to the document output tray. Remove the original.
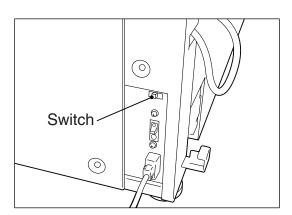
Precautions When Handling Originals

Observe the following precautions when handling originals.

- The scanning area will become contaminated if documents have glue, adhesive tape, or correction fluid on them. Avoid scanning documents that have stick-type glue or spray glue applied to them.
- Black lines or streaks may appear on copies if the scanning area is contaminated.
- When scanning rolled documents, ensure that the diameter of the roll is 40 mm or larger. Flatten rolls that have a diameter of 40 mm or less.
- Feeding the following types of originals may cause document jams and tearing, and image quality defects (white blotches) on copies.
  - Originals that are badly wrinkled.
  - Originals that are badly curled.
  - Originals that are perforated, creased, or torn.
  - Originals to which tape has been adhered.
  - Originals that are stapled together.
  - Originals that contain holes that exceed 25 mm.
  - Originals to which glue or adhesive tape has been applied.
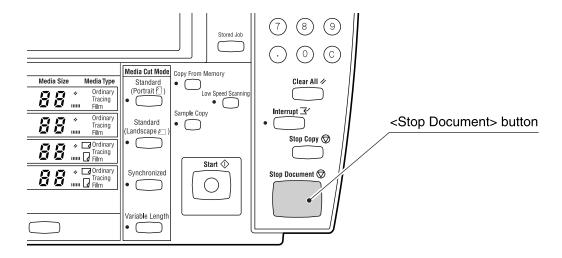
Using the Paper Heater

Media may wrinkle when used in a high humidity environment. Switching the paper heater on can prevent paper from becoming wrinkled. Use the switch shown in the illustration to switch the paper heater on and off.

1.10 Stopping Document Scanning

Press the <Stop Document> key on the control panel to stop a scan.
The scanner will stop immediately.

Note *Blank copies may be output after the <Stop Document> key is pressed.*

1.11 Loading Roll Media

The message 'Replace xxx media." will display when there is no media loaded
or when the roll in use runs out.
The media size displayed on the control panel will turn off when there is no
media in the machine.
Two rolls of media can be loaded in each of the media trays.
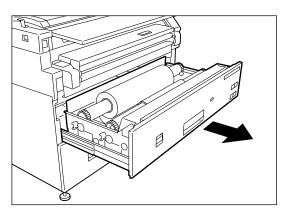
> **Important** *Refer to the instructions provided in "1.15 Setting Up Media" and set up the
> media parameters after the roll media has been loaded.*
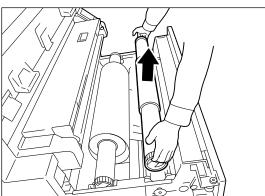
> **Note** *Media can be reloaded in the lower media tray while printing is occurring from the
> upper media tray. Be sure that the Feeder LED on the lower media tray is off (not
> illuminated) before opening the lower media tray.*

Procedure
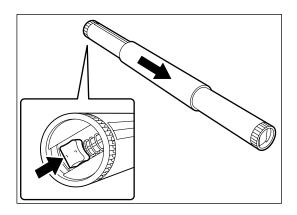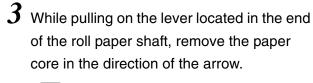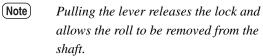
1 Open the media tray.
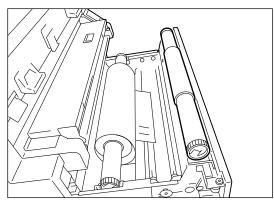
2 Remove the shaft containing the roll paper
that is to be replaced.

3 While pulling on the lever located in the end of the roll paper shaft, remove the paper core in the direction of the arrow.

(Note)   *Pulling the lever releases the lock and allows the roll to be removed from the shaft.*
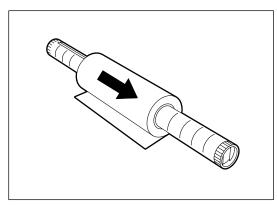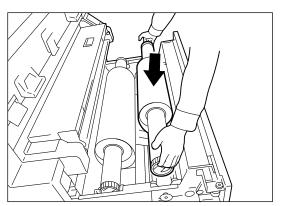
(Note)   *There is an area at the front of the tray on which the roll paper can be placed.*
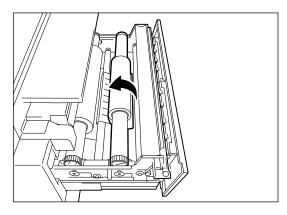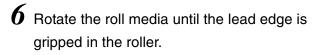
4 While pulling the lever located in the end of the roll paper shaft, align the roll paper with the paper size marks on the shaft and set the roll in place.

5 Align the roll paper following the directions displayed inside the media tray and load the roll on the shaft guide.
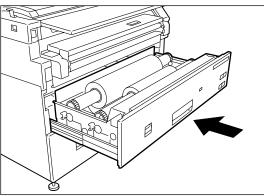
(Note)   *Cut the lead edge of the media before setting it in place if it is damaged. Refer to "1.14 Cutting Roll Media" for details on how to do this.*

6 Rotate the roll media until the lead edge is gripped in the roller.

> (Note) *Rotate the knob until the leading edge of the paper can be seen in the window.*

7 Gently but firmly close the media tray. The LED on the front of the tray will illuminate, and the roll paper will feed automatically to its starting position.

8 Set up the media parameters on the copier control panel.

> (Refer to) *"1.15 Setting Up Media"*

(Note) The media parameters also may be set up on the printer control panel.

(Refer to) *"Chapter 10 Additional Operations from the Printer Menu"*

1.12 Drawer Media Size Indicators

The media size indictors help the user identify the media that is loaded in each of the drawers. These indicators are visible on the right hand side of the drawers. Usage instructions begin on the next page.

The following types are available.

- Standard size A
- Inch size A

Standard size A
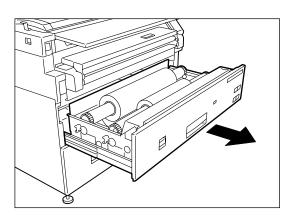
B2	Sp.A2	Sp.A0	A2	A0

Inch size A
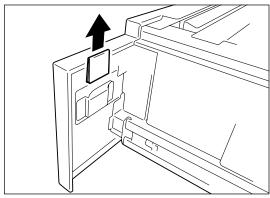
11"	17"	22"	30"	36"
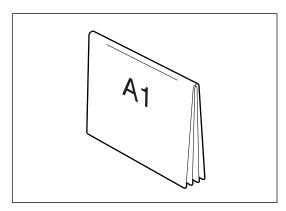
Inserting media size sheets
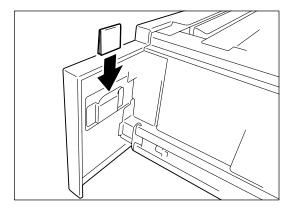
1 Open the tray.
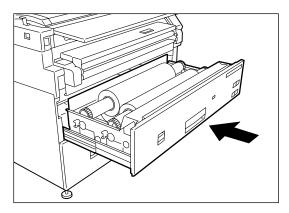
2 Remove the media size sheet.

3 Fold the sheet so that the size loaded is displayed.

A1
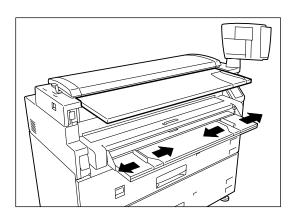
4 Insert the media size sheet.

5 Gently but firmly close the media tray.

1.13 Loading Media for Manual Feeding

1 Adjust the (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/ Manual Feed Unit's side guides to fit the size of the media that is to be printed.

2 Place the side of the media to be printed face up, and align it with the (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit's side guides.

> **Important**
> • *The optional (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit is required when making manually fed copies.*
> • *Standard paper having a width of 297 to 914 mm and a length of 210 to 2,000 mm can be used with the (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit.*

3 Push the front edge of the media as far into the machine as it will go. You will hear the sound of a motor as the machine lifts the media to the feed position.

> **Important**
> *Two or more sheets of A3 (horizontal feed) and A4 (horizontal/vertical feed) size paper can be placed in the MSI. Paper sizes other than A3 (horizontal feed) and A4 (horizontal/vertical feed) sizes must be inserted one sheet at a time.*
> *Only Bond paper can be used in the (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit.*

4 Make the required media settings on the copier control panel.

1.14 Cutting Roll Media

The lead edge of the media should be cut when the media is loaded, on recovery from a media jam, and when the lead edge of the roll is damaged. There are two methods for cutting the lead edge of the roll media:

- Automatic cut: This involves making selections on either the copier control panel touch screen or the printer control panel.
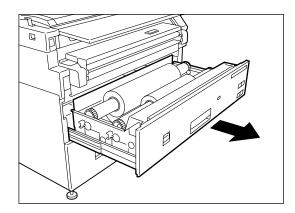
(Refer to) *Refer to the section " Setting up Media on the Copier Control Panel" in this chapter and to "10.8 Automatic Cut Using the Printer Control Panel" in "Chapter 10 Additional Operations from the Printer Menu" for details about automatic cutting.*

- Manual cut: Open the media tray and slide the cutter manually.
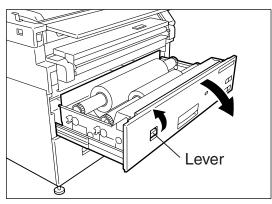
(Refer to) *Refer to section " Cutting Roll Media Manually" in this chapter.*

Cutting Roll Media Manually
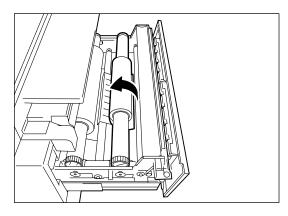
Cutting the Front Roll
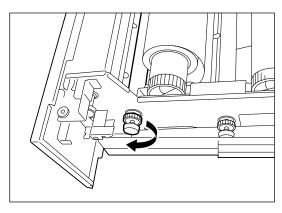
1 Open the media tray.
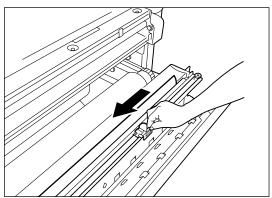
2 Pull the lever to open the tray cover.

Lever

3 Rotate the roll media until the lead edge is gripped by the roller.
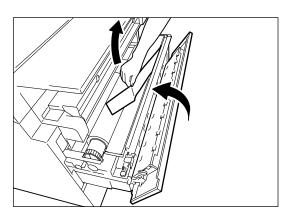
4 Rotate the knob until the media's lead edge protrudes from the tray outlet.
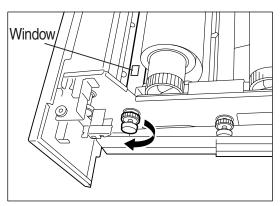
5 Grasp the cutter by the handle and slide it to the opposite side of the tray to cut the paper.

   CAUTION: Use the cutter handle to prevent personal injury which may result from sliding your fingers along the sharp, metal cutting bar.
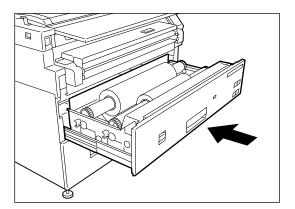
6 Remove the cut off media.

7 Close the tray cover.
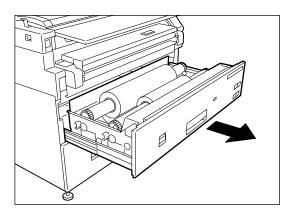
8 Return the media to its original location by rotating the knob until the lead edge can be seen in the window.

Window
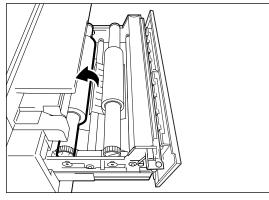
9 Close the media tray.
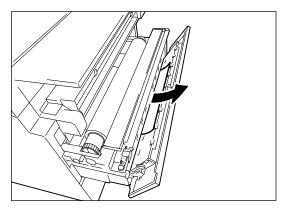
Cutting the Rear Roll
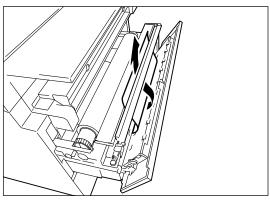
1 Open the media tray.
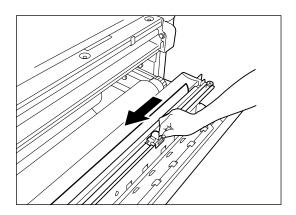
2 Rotate the roll paper until the lead edge is gripped by the roller.
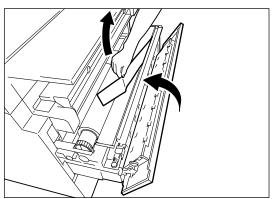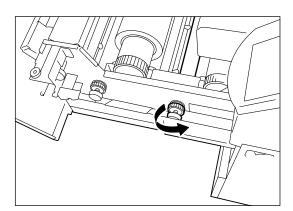
3 Rotate the knob until the media's lead edge protrudes from the tray outlet.

4 Pull the lever to open the tray cover.
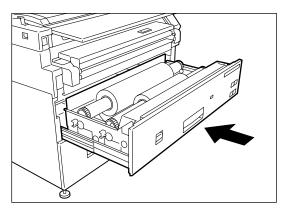
5 Rotate the knob until the paper passes through the tray outlet.

6 Grasping the cutter by the handle, slide the cutter to the opposite side of the tray to cut the paper.

CAUTION: Use the cutter handle to prevent personal injury which may result from sliding your fingers along the sharp, metal cutting bar.

7 Remove the media that was cut off.

8 Close the tray cover.

9 Return the media to its original location by rotating the knob until the lead edge can be seen in the window.

10 Close the media tray.

1.15 Setting Up Media

The media parameters (size series, type, weight) must be set up when new media is loaded or when the size, type, and/or weight of the media is changed. This information enables the machine's controller to optimize imaging, printing, and fusing based on the media which is selected for a copy or print job.
The media settings may be made at either the copier control panel or the printer control panel. This section describes how to make these settings at the copier control panel.

Refer *Refer to the section " Setting Up Media" in "Chapter 10 Additional Operations from the Printer Menu" for details on making media setups on the printer control panel.*

Media Parameters

The following Size Series/Media Type/Weight parameters must be set up.

Settings	Eligible Values
Size Series	The size series is selected from [ISO A], [SP. A-1], [SP. A-2], [ISO B], [ARCH], [ANSI], and [ARCH-30].
Media Type	The media type is selected from [Bond], [Vellum], or [Film].
Weight	The weight is selected from [Light], [Ordinary], or [Heavy].

The media Size Series and sizes that can be set up are as follows.

Size Series	Eligible Media	
ISO A series	A4 (210 × 297 mm)	
	A3 (297 × 420 mm)	A3 roll media (297 mm wide)
	A2 (420 × 594 mm)	A2 roll media (420 mm wide)
	A1 (594 × 841 mm)	A1 roll media (594 mm wide)
	A0 (841 × 1,189 mm)	A0 roll media (841 mm wide)
ISO B series	B4 (250 x 353 mm)	B4 roll media (250 mm wide)
	B3 (353 x 500 mm)	B3 roll media (353 mm wide)
	B2 (500 x 707 mm)	B2 roll media (500 mm wide)
	B1 (707 x 1000 mm)	B1 roll media (707 mm wide)
SP. A-1 series	SP. A-0 (880 × 1,230 mm)	SP. A-0 roll media (880 mm wide)
	SP. A-1 (625 × 880 mm)	SP. A-1 roll media (625 mm wide)
	SP. A-2 (440 × 625 mm)	SP. A-2 roll media (440 mm wide)
	SP. A-3 (312 × 440 mm)	SP. A-3 roll media (312 mm wide)

Size Series	Eligible Media	
SP. A-2 series	SP. A-1 (620 × 871 mm)	SP. A-1 roll media (620 mm wide)
	SP. A-2 (435 × 620 mm)	SP. A-2 roll media (435 mm wide)
SP. A-3 series	SP. A-3 (310 × 435 mm)	SP. A-3 roll media (310 mm wide)
ARCH	36", 24", 18", 12", 9"	
ANSI	34", 22", 17", 11", 8.5"	
ARCH-30	30", 24", 18", 12", 9"	

The media [Weight] can been specified as follows:

Media set to [Light]	Bond (16-18lb./ 60-69g/m^2)	
	Vellum (18-20lb./ 70-79g/m^2)	
	Film (50-69μ)	
Media set to Ordinary [Ord.]	Bond (18-20lb./ 70-85g/m^2)	Premium (20lb./75gsm) Performance (20lb./75gsm)
	Vellum (20-24lb./ 80-95g/m^2))	Premium Tracing (24lb./ 90gsm)
	Film (70-80μ)	Premium Film (75micron)
Media set to [Heavy]	Bond (20-29lb./ 86-110g/m^2)	Presentation (29lb./110gsm)
	Vellum (24-29lb./ 96-112g/m^2)	Premium Tracing (29lb./112gsm)
	Film (81-100μ)	Premium Film (100micron)

Setting up Media on the Copier Control Panel
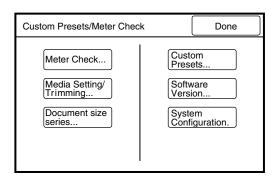
This section explains how to set up the media on the copier control panel.

Procedure

1 Press the <Custom Presets/Meter Check> key.
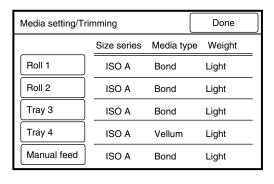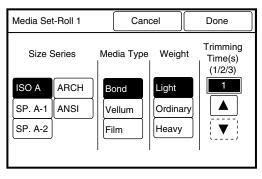
2 The [Custom Presets/Meter Check] screen will display. Select [Media Setting/Trimming].

Custom Presets/Meter Check	Done
Meter Check...	Custom Presets...
Media Setting/ Trimming...	Software Version...
Document size series...	System Configuration.

3 The [Media Setting/Trimming] screen will display. Select the roll that is to be set up, or the Manual Feed tray.

Media setting/Trimming			Done
	Size series	Media type	Weight
Roll 1	ISO A	Bond	Light
Roll 2	ISO A	Bond	Light
Tray 3	ISO A	Bond	Light
Tray 4	ISO A	Vellum	Light
Manual feed	ISO A	Bond	Light

4 Select the appropriate [Size Series], [Media Type], and [Weight]. To trim the lead edge of roll media, set the Trimming Time using the [▲] and [▼] buttons, and then press the <Start> key on the control panel. Press the [Done] button.

Media Set-Roll 1	Cancel	Done

Size Series: ISO A, ARCH, SP. A-1, ANSI, SP. A-2

Media Type: Bond, Vellum, Film

Weight: Light, Ordinary, Heavy

Trimming Time(s) (1/2/3): 1 ▲ ▼
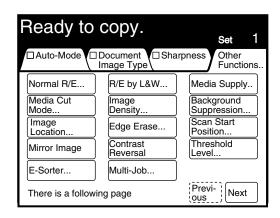
5 Press the [Done] button on the
[Media Setting/Trimming] screen.
The media settings are complete.
The screen returns to the [Custom
Presets – System Presets] screen.

1.16 Copy, Print, and Scan Functions

The 6030/6050 Wide Format Copier/Printer can be used as a copier, a printer, and a scanner. This section provides an overview of the copy, the printer, and the scanner modes.
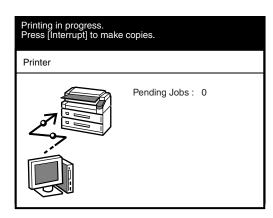
Copy Mode

Images which are scanned with the scanner are printed from the 6030/6050 Wide Format Copier/Printer as copies. This screen enables the user to set up the copy functions.

```
Ready to copy.
                                    Set    1
  ☐Auto-Mode  ☐Document  ☐Sharpness  Other
              Image Type              Functions..

  Normal R/E...    R/E by L&W...    Media Supply..

  Media Cut        Image            Background
  Mode...          Density...       Suppression...

  Image            Edge Erase...    Scan Start
  Location...                       Position...

  Mirror Image     Contrast         Threshold
                   Reversal         Level...

  E-Sorter...      Multi-Job...

  There is a following page         Previ-   Next
                                    ous
```

Printer Mode

The printer mode activates when print data is received from an external host PC. The machine reverts to the copier mode when printing is completed.

```
Printing in progress.
Press [Interrupt] to make copies.

Printer

                    Pending Jobs :  0
```
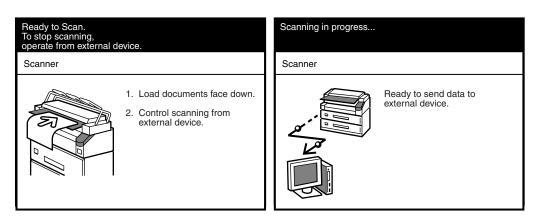
(Note)   *Press the [Interrupt] key to switch to the copier mode when printing is in progress. Refer to "2.3 Interruption Copying" for more details.*

Scanner Mode

The scanner mode activates when a signal is received from the host PC. Images scanned with the scanner are transmitted to the host PC when in the scanner mode.

An instruction is required from the host PC to cancel the scanner mode.

(Refer to) *Refer to "Chapter 6 Scanner Functions" for more details on the scanner functions.*

Chapter 2

Copy

2.1 Main Copy Features

The 6030/6050 Wide Format Copier/Printer provides the following copy features.

■Document Image Type
Ensures that the image data from the scanned original is faithfully reproduced in the copy.
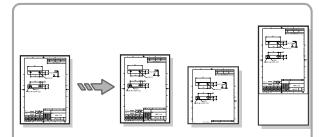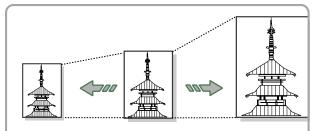
■Sharpness
Increases or decreases the sharpness of lines.
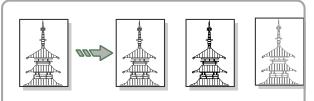
■Media Cut
Cuts roll media to standard, non-standard, or user-defined sizes.
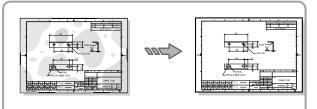
■Reduce/Enlarge
Reduces or enlarges copies.
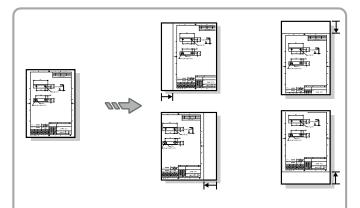
■Copy Density
Adjusts the density (darkness or lightness) of copies.
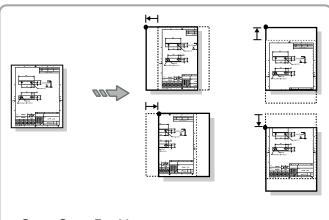
■Background Suppression
Eliminates unwanted background which may be present on originals.

■Image Location

Moves the printed image up, down, left, and right.

■Edge Erase

Erases unwanted detail from the edges of the document.
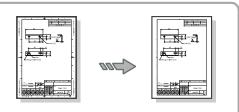
■Scan Start Position

Specifies the location on the document where scanning will begin.

■Mirror Image

Creates a mirror image of the original document.

■Contrast Reversal
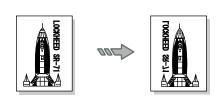
Reverses the black and white contrast areas of the image.

2.2 Copying Procedure
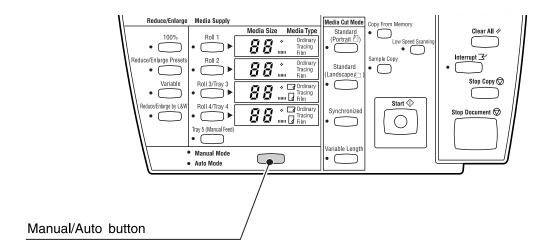
This section describes the basic procedures for making copies. It also describes automatic enlargement and reduction based on media selection.

Auto and Manual Copying Modes

Copies can be made in either of two modes - Auto or Manual. The Copier/Printer can be switched between these modes by pressing the <Manual/Auto> key.

When copying is performed in the [Auto Mode], the 6030/6050 Wide Format Copier/Printer will automatically print either an enlarged or a reduced copy based on the selected media size. In order for the [Auto Mode] to work correctly, a table that establishes the relationships between document sizes and media sizes first must be created. The media type also is set up beforehand, using the custom presets function. When copies are made, the resulting reduction or enlargement and media type selection are based on both the document size and the entries in the size- and media-mapping tables.

Copying in the [Manual Mode] requires the user to select the copy settings (reduction/enlargement, media type, etc.) before making a copy. If the <Reduce/Enlarge> key or the <Media Supply> key is pressed while the machine is in the auto mode, the mode will be canceled and the manual mode activated.

Manual/Auto button
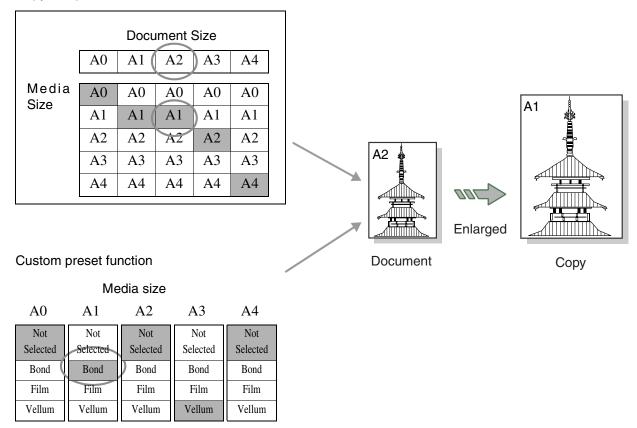
Note   *The document size is automatically recognized based on the size series information which is set up using the custom presets. Refer to section "5.5 Document Size Series" for more details.*

Activate the auto mode to display the media mapping table on the touch screen. The media size that will be selected for each scanned document size is set up in this table. In the example below, an A2 document is enlarged to the A1 size (141.4%) and copied on bond A1 paper (the settings are the shaded values). A [No Paper] error will occur if A1 paper is not loaded in the tray.

Copy setup screen

	Document Size				
	A0	A1	A2	A3	A4
Media Size A0	A0	A0	A0	A0	A0
A1	A1	A1	A1	A1	A1
A2	A2	A2	A2	A2	A2
A3	A3	A3	A3	A3	A3
A4	A4	A4	A4	A4	A4

A2

Document

Enlarged

A1

Copy

Custom preset function

Media size

A0	A1	A2	A3	A4
Not Selected	Not Selected	Not Selected	Not Selected	Not Selected
Bond	Bond	Bond	Bond	Bond
Film	Film	Film	Film	Film
Vellum	Vellum	Vellum	Vellum	Vellum

(Refer to)
- *Refer to section "3.2 Making Copies in the Auto Mode" for more details on the auto mode.*
- *Refer to the "Media Type for Auto Mode" section in "5.3 Setting up the Copy Features" for more details on the custom presets.*

Basic Copying Procedure

This section explains the basic steps that are involved in making copies.

(Refer to) *Refer to "Sorting Using E-Sorter" and "Sorting Using Multi-Job" to learn how to produce collated and sorted copies of multiple originals.*

Procedure

(Note) *The media mapping table must be set up before copying can be performed in the Auto mode.*

(Note) *To copy to 30 inch media you must use the Manual mode and select the roll number that contains the 30 inch media. Automatic roll switching is not available.*

1 When copying in the manual mode, select the required reduction or enlargement and the media type on the copier control panel.

(Refer to) *Refer to "Selecting the Reduction/Enlargement Settings" and "Selecting the Media Supply" in this chapter for more details on these functions.*

2 Select the required copy features, for example, the background suppression, image density, media cut mode, etc.

3 Enter the copy quantity on the keypad. The quantity can be set from 1 to 99.

4 Insert the document in the scanner face down. Be sure that the edge of the document is aligned with the document insertion guide. The document will begin scanning automatically if automatic scanning is enabled. If automatic scanning is not enabled, press the <Start> key.

(Note) *Refer to the "How to Start Scanning" section in "5.2 Setting up the System Presets" for more details on the custom presets.*

(Refer to) *Refer to "1.9 Using Originals" in this chapter for more details on loading documents.*

The scanned data will enter the print queue. The copy will print when its number is reached.

Making Manual Feed Copies

Manual feeding of cut sheet media is performed using the optional Multi Sheet Inserter (MSI). Up to 100 sheets of A3 portrait or A4 portrait/landscape media (standard paper only) can be loaded in the Multi Sheet Inserter. Larger size paper must be loaded one sheet at a time.
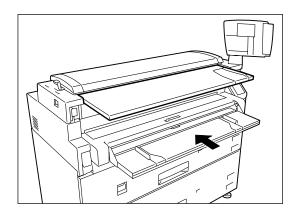
Important • *Standard paper having a width of 297 to 914 mm and a length of 210 to 2,000 mm can be used in the MSI.*

Note *The auto mode cannot be used when making manual feed copies.*

Procedure
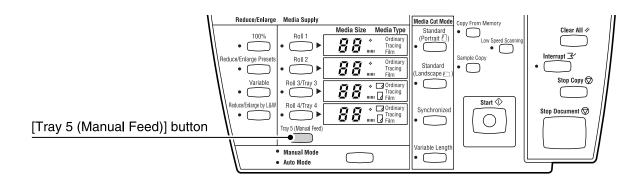
1 Open the manual feed table, set the media in place, and adjust the side guides to the edges of the media.

Refer to *Refer to section "1.13 Loading Media for Manual Feeding" in "Chapter 1 Product Overview" for more information on loading media in the MSI.*

2 Press the <Tray 5 (Manual Feed)> key on the control panel.

[Tray 5 (Manual Feed)] button

3 Make the required copy settings, for example, reduction/enlargement, background suppression, and image density.

Refer to *Refer to "Selecting the Reduction/Enlargement Settings" and "Adjusting Density and Background Suppression" in this chapter for more details on these functions.*

4 Enter the copy quantity on the keypad.

Note *The number of copies can only be specified when A3 or A4 size paper is being used.*

5 Insert the document in the scanner face down, with the edge aligned with the document insertion guide.

The document will begin to scan automatically if scanning is set to [Auto].

Note *If "start document scanning" is set to manual, press the <Start> key at this time. Refer to "How to Start Scanning" in "5.2 Setting up the System Presets" for more details on the custom presets.*

Refer to *Refer to "1.9 Using Originals" in this manual for more details on loading documents.*

Otherwise, press the <Start> key.
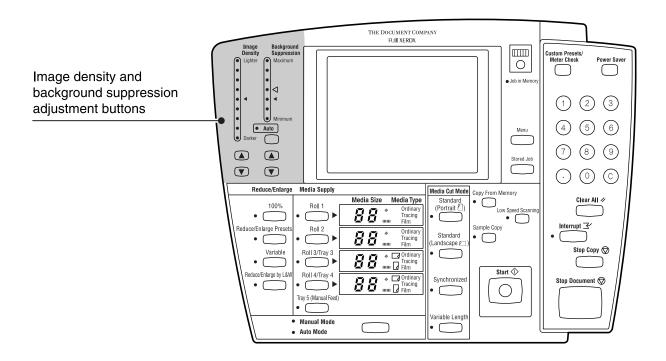
The scanned data will enter the print queue. The copy will print when its output number is reached.

6 Return the manual feed table to its original position.

Adjusting Density and Background Suppression

Image density may be set at any one of nine levels using the buttons on the control panel. The <▲> key decreases the density; the <▼> key increases the density.

Background suppression may be used to eliminate the background which may be present on originals such as blueprints, documents printed on colored paper, or documents that have discolored or darkened with age. The <▲> key increases the amount of background suppression, and the <▼> key decreases it.

Image density and background suppression adjustment buttons

[Refer to] *Refer to "3.8 Image Density" and "3.9 Background Suppression" for more details on these functions.*

[Note] *This function can also be performed on the copier touch screen.*
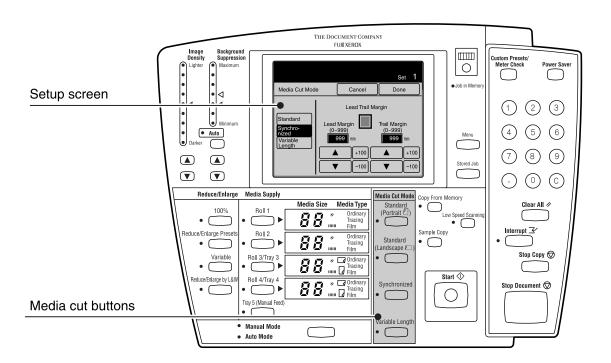
Selecting the Media Cut Mode

The media cut mode setting determines where the cut will occur on standard and non-standard size copies which are printed on roll media. The following methods are available.

- Standard Portrait   Cuts the copy to the standard size that matches the dimensions of a standard size document that is scanned in a portrait (vertical) orientation.

- Standard Landscape Cuts the copy to the standard size that matches the dimensions of a standard size document that is scanned in a landscape (horizontal) orientation.

- Synchronized   Used primarily with non-standard size documents, the Synchronized cut mode cuts the media to the same dimensions as the document. When reduction or enlargement is selected, the copy will retain the same length to width ratio as the original. Top and bottom margins that range from 0 to 999 mm also can be added to the copy.

- Variable Length   Cuts the roll media to a specified length, that is, from 210 to 15,000 mm.

The advanced media cut mode settings are set up on the touch screen when the <Synchronized> key and the <Variable Length> key are pressed.

Setup screen

Media cut buttons

Refer to *Refer to "1.14 Cutting Roll Media" for further more details on this function.*
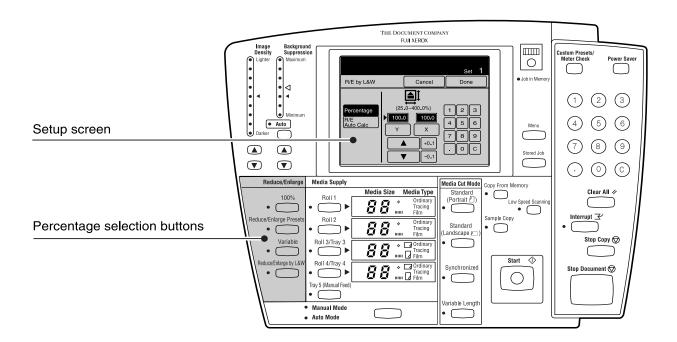
Selecting the Reduction/Enlargement Settings

The Reduction/Enlargement (R/E) settings determine the percentage of the document size that the copy will be printed. The R/E settings must be selected when copying in the manual mode. The following selections are available.

- 100%   Copies the document full size.
- Reduce/Enlarge Enables any one of the six R/E presets to be selected.
  Presets
- Variable   Copies the document at a specified percentage in a range from 25% to 400%.
- Reduce/Enlarge Changes the length and width that are to be used for the copy.
  by L&W

The reduction and enlargement settings must be made on the setup screens when the <Reduce/Enlarge Presets> key, the <Variable> key, or the <Reduce/Enlarge by L&W> key is pressed.

Setup screen

Percentage selection buttons
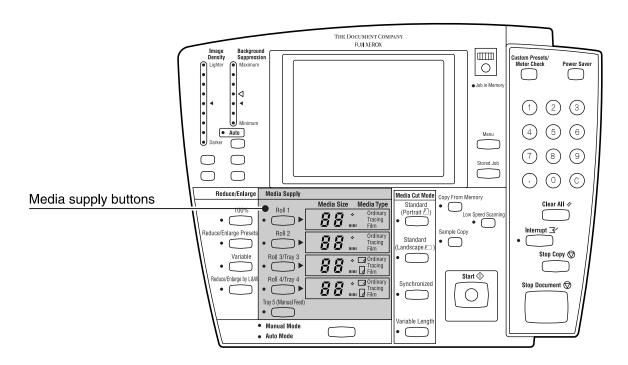
Refer to   *Refer to "3.5 Reduction and Enlargement" for more details on this function.*

Selecting the Media Supply

Select the media source when copying in the manual mode.

Note   *Only single copies can be made for media types other than A3 and A4 when using the manual feed function. Also, the folder function cannot be used.*

Media supply buttons

Refer to   *Refer to "3.6 Selecting the Media Supply" in this manual for further more details on this function.*

2.3 Interruption Copying

It is possible to interrupt large copying jobs when a high priority copy must be made. The settings for the interrupted job are retained until the interruption job is finished.

(Note) • *The following are not possible during interruption copying.*
•Interruptions by other copying jobs.
•<Custom Presets/Meter Check> key operations.
•Sorted output and multi-jobs.

Procedure

1 Press the <Interrupt> key on the control panel.
The [Interrupt] lamp will illuminate and the job that is in process will be suspended.

(Note) *An "interruption reservation status" goes into effect if the interruption job cannot be processed immediately.*

2 Make the required copy settings (R/E, background suppression, image density, etc.) for the new copy job.

3 Enter the copy quantity (1 to 99) on the keypad.

4 Insert the document in the scanner face down, with the edge aligned with the document insertion guide. The document will scan.

5 When the interruption job is finished, press the <Interrupt> key again.
The interruption mode will be cancelled and processing of the suspended job will resume.

(Note) *If you forget to cancel the interruption mode, it will be canceled automatically after a preset period elapses during which no copies are made.*

2.4 Copying from Memory

The [Copy from Memory] function enables the user to reprint the most recently copied document. If the most recent job involved collation, a complete set of sorted copies will reprint.

[Copy from Memory] can not be used under the following conditions.
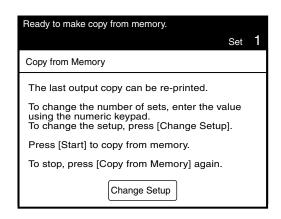
- The <Clear All> key is pressed.
- The latest image no longer remains in the memory because too much time has elapsed and the machine has reverted to the default copy settings.
- The power is switched off.
- The power saver mode is active.
- A new document is inserted.
- The machine is in the scanner mode.
- Interruption copying is being performed.
- The <Custom Presets/Media Check> key is pressed.
- The scanned image exceeds the installed memory capacity.

(Note)
- *The media cut method cannot be changed when copying from memory.*
- *The copy from memory function and the sample copy function cannot be used at the same time.*
- *Copying from memory is not possible when sorted program copying or multi-job copying has been performed.*
- *If the <Clear All> key is pressed while copying from memory, the copy from memory settings will be retained. The settings will not revert to the copy defaults which are set up using the custom presets.*

Procedure
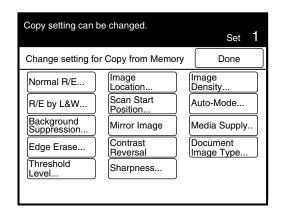
1 Press the <Copy From Memory> key on the control panel.

The [Copy from Memory] screen will display.

```
Ready to make copy from memory.
                                        Set    1

Copy from Memory

  The last output copy can be re-printed.

  To change the number of sets, enter the value
  using the numeric keypad.
  To change the setup, press [Change Setup].

  Press [Start] to copy from memory.

  To stop, press [Copy from Memory] again.

                    Change Setup
```

2 Press [Change Setup] if you need to change the copy settings.

(Note) *On the 6030/6050 Wide Format Copier/Printer, the <Change Setup> key will not be displayed unless the optional Scan & Function Extension Set is installed.*

```
Copy setting can be changed.
                                        Set    1

Change setting for Copy from Memory     Done

 Normal R/E...   Image            Image
                 Location...      Density...

 R/E by L&W...   Scan Start       Auto-Mode...
                 Position...

 Background      Mirror Image     Media Supply..
 Suppression...

 Edge Erase...   Contrast         Document
                 Reversal         Image Type...

 Threshold       Sharpness...
 Level...
```

3 Enter the copy quantity (1 to 99) on the keypad.

4 Press the <Start> key.
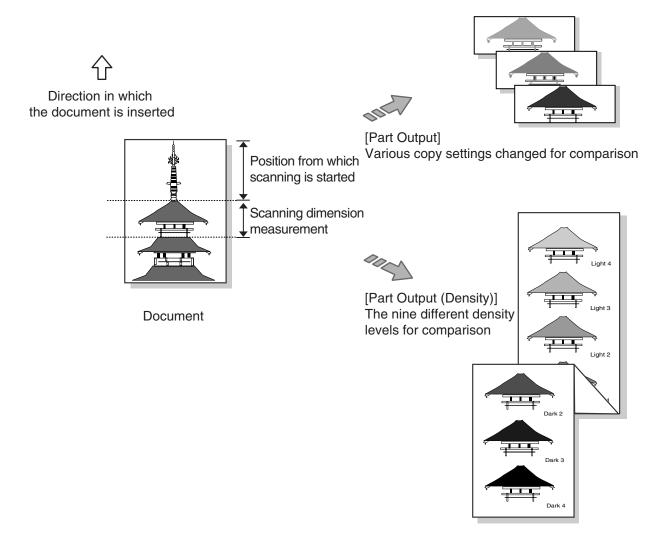
The machine will start and the most recent copy will print.

5 Press the <Copy From Memory> key again when the job is finished to cancel the [Copy from Memory] mode.

(Note) *If you forget to cancel the [Copy from Memory] mode, it will be automatically cancel after a preset period of time elapses during which no copies are made.*

2.5   Sample Copies

The Sample Copy feature enables users to evaluate the effects on copy quality of selecting different copy settings.
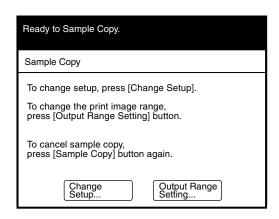
The area to be copied can be set as well. It is possible to change the enlarge/reduce settings, the image density, the image type and all other settings for this area of the document by selecting [Part Output] when the [Output Range Setting] button has been selected.

It is also possible to view only the nine different levels of density of the selected area of the image by selecting [Part Output (Density)] when the [Output Range Setting] button has been selected.

Direction in which
the document is inserted

Position from which
scanning is started

Scanning dimension
measurement

Document

[Part Output]
Various copy settings changed for comparison

[Part Output (Density)]
The nine different density
levels for comparison

Light 4

Light 3

Light 2

Dark 2

Dark 3

Dark 4

Procedure
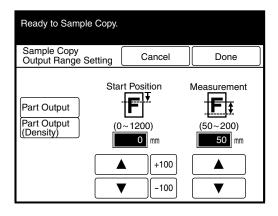
1 Press the <Sample Copy> key on the control panel.

The [Sample Copy] screen will display.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Ready to Sample Copy.                    │
├─────────────────────────────────────────┤
│ Sample Copy                              │
│ ┌─────────────────────────────────────┐ │
│ │ To change setup, press [Change Setup].│ │
│ │                                      │ │
│ │ To change the print image range,     │ │
│ │ press [Output Range Setting] button. │ │
│ │                                      │ │
│ │                                      │ │
│ │ To cancel sample copy,               │ │
│ │ press [Sample Copy] button again.    │ │
│ │                                      │ │
│ │   ┌──────────┐    ┌──────────────┐  │ │
│ │   │ Change   │    │ Output Range │  │ │
│ │   │ Setup... │    │ Setting...   │  │ │
│ │   └──────────┘    └──────────────┘  │ │
│ └─────────────────────────────────────┘ │
└─────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

2 Press the [Output Range Setting] button to define the output range, that is, the section of the copy that will be printed using the new copy settings.

Press the [Change Setup] button to set up the copy features.

↳ When the [Output Range Setting] button is pressed.

The [Sample Copy Output Range Setting] screen will display.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Ready to Sample Copy.                    │
├─────────────────────────────────────────┤
│ Sample Copy      ┌────────┐ ┌────────┐  │
│ Output Range Setting │Cancel│ │ Done │  │
│                  └────────┘ └────────┘  │
│              Start Position  Measurement │
│ ┌──────────┐      ┌──┐         ┌──┐      │
│ │Part Output│     │F │         │F │      │
│ ├──────────┤      └──┘         └──┘      │
│ │Part Output│   (0~1200)     (50~200)    │
│ │(Density) │   ┌────┐        ┌────┐      │
│ └──────────┘   │ 0  │mm      │ 50 │mm    │
│                └────┘        └────┘      │
│               ┌───┐┌────┐   ┌───┐        │
│               │ ▲ ││+100│   │ ▲ │        │
│               └───┘└────┘   └───┘        │
│               ┌───┐┌────┐   ┌───┐        │
│               │ ▼ ││-100│   │ ▼ │        │
│               └───┘└────┘   └───┘        │
└─────────────────────────────────────────┘
```
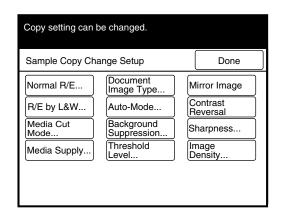
Select either [Part Output] or [Part Output (Density)]. Then, set up the start position and the measurement value with the use of the [▲] and [▼] buttons.

(Note) *Press the [+100] or [–100] buttons to change the value in increments of 100 mm.*

When the [Change Setup] button is pressed

The [Sample Copy Change Setup] screen will display.

```
Copy setting can be changed.

Sample Copy Change Setup          |    Done    |

| Normal R/E... |  | Document     |   | Mirror Image |
                    | Image Type...|

| R/E by L&W... |  | Auto-Mode... |   | Contrast     |
                                       | Reversal     |

| Media Cut     |  | Background   |   | Sharpness... |
| Mode...       |  | Suppression..|

| Media Supply..|  | Threshold    |   | Image        |
                    | Level...     |   | Density...   |
```

Set up each of the required functions.

(Refer to) *Refer to "3.1 Overview" in this manual for more details on these functions.*

3 Insert the document in the scanner face down, and with the edge aligned with the document insertion guide. The document will scan.

4 Press the <Start> key. A sample copy which includes the selected settings will print.

5 Repeat steps **1** through **4** to print additional sample copies.

(Note) *The sample copy mode is canceled every time a sample copy is printed. To print additional sample copies, press the <Sample Copy> key again and make the necessary setting adjustments.*

6 Once the desired copy quality is achieved, press the <Copy From Memory> key to print the document again. The changed settings will be applied to the entire image.

(Refer to) *Refer to "2.4 Copying from Memory" in this manual for more details on how to copy from the memory.*

Chapter 3

Copy Features

3.1 Overview

The 6030/6050 Wide Format Copier/Printer has the following copy features.

Function	Description
Auto-Mode copying	Sets up the automatic copying mode.
Document Image Type	Enables the user to select the image type that best matches the original, for example, [Line], [Photo], [Line (Diazo)]. Helps ensure optimal copy quality.
Sharpness	Adjusts the sharpness of image outlines.
Normal R/E	Enlarges and reduces images.
R/E by L&W	Enables the user simultaneously to apply different length and width reduction and/or enlargement settings to an image.
Media Supply	Selects the roll to use for copying (or the manual feeder).
Media Cut Mode	Enables the user to select the cutting method for roll media.
Image density	Adjusts the copy density.
Background Suppression	Suppresses background and noise which may be present on originals which consist largely of lines and text.
Image Location	Moves the location of the image on the copy when folding and other functions are to be applied.
Edge Erase	Erases unwanted detail which may be present on the outside edges of originals.
Scan Start Position	Changes the location on an original where the scanner begins to collect and transmit image information.
Mirror Image	Inverts the image of the original as if reflected in a mirror.
Contrast Reversal	Reverses the black and white contrast levels of an original, much like a photographic negative.
Threshold Level	Assigns black or white values to gray scale shades on the document.
E-Sorter	Sorts the image data from multiple scanned originals for collation purposes.
Multi-Job	Sorts copies for multiple stored jobs.

3.2 Making Copies in the Auto Mode

The auto-mode allows you to automatically reduce or enlarge an original based on the entries in the media mapping table. The media mapping table is a matrix that specifies which media size will be selected when a standard size original is copied. For example, a media mapping table may specify that ARCH D originals will be copied on ARCH B media. In this case, the ARCH D original will be reduced and printed automatically on ARCH B media, without the user having to enter a reduction percentage. The media mapping table is created using the custom presets.

(Note)
 • *The [Media Supply], [Normal R/E], and [R/E by L&W] settings are invalid when the auto mode is selected.*
 • *The [Media Cut Mode] and [Variable Length] settings cannot be used in combination when in the auto mode.*

(Refer to)
 • *Refer to "Media Type for Auto Mode" in "5.3 Setting up the Copy Features" for details on the custom presets.*
 • *Refer to "1.14 Cutting Roll Media" for details on the media cut mode.*

Media Size Restrictions in the Auto Mode

The following restrictions apply to making copies in the auto mode. These restrictions are based on the media cut mode that is specified for various media sizes.

Media Series	Media Cut	Restrictions
ANSI series	Portrait	No restrictions.
	Landscape	Document size: E cannot be selected. Media size: E cannot be set up.
	Synchronized	Media size: A cannot be set up.
ARCH series	Portrait	No restrictions.
	Landscape	Document size: E cannot be selected. Media size: E cannot be set up.
	Synchronized	Media size: A cannot be set up.
ISOA series	Portrait	No restrictions.
	Landscape	Document size: A0 cannot be selected. Media size: A0 cannot be set up.
	Synchronized	Media size: A4 cannot be set up.

Media Series	Media Cut	Restrictions
Special A series	Portrait	SP. A-3 cannot be set up as the media size when Auto Image Rotate is set to [Off]. No restrictions for the media size when Auto Image Rotate is set to [On].
	Landscape	SP. A-0 cannot be set up as the document size. SP. A-0 cannot be set up as the media size.
	Synchronized	SP. A-3 and SP A-4 cannot be set up as the media size.

Procedure
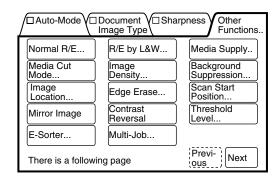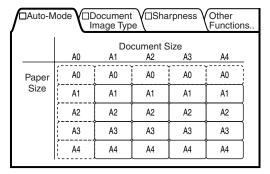
1 Select the [Auto-Mode] tab from the copier's menu screen.

(Note) *The same operation can be performed by pressing the <Manual/Auto Mode> key on the control panel.*
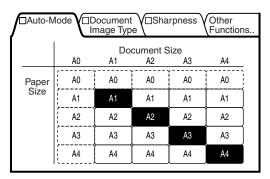
The [Auto-Mode] screen will display.

2 Set up the media sizes that are to correspond with the document sizes.

The media sizes that correspond with the document widths are set when [Synchronized] has been selected on the [Media Cut Mode] screen.

The [Auto-Mode] lamp will illuminate after the settings are made.
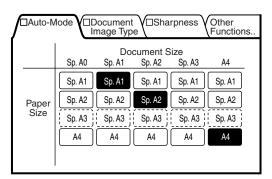
(Note) *Either press the Manual Mode/ Auto Mode button or select [Percentages] or [Media] to cancel the auto mode.*
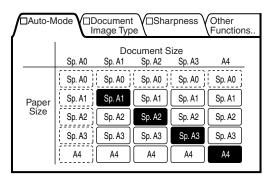
| □ Auto-Mode | □ Document Image Type | □ Sharpness | Other Functions.. |

Document Width

Paper Width (Paper is cut according to the original length)	A0	A1	A2	A3	A4
	A0	A0	A0	A0	A0
	A1	**A1**	A1	A1	A1
	A2	A2	**A2**	A2	A2
	A3	A3	A3	**A3**	A3
	A4	A4	A4	A4	A4

The following are examples of the displays when the Special A series has been specified:

Portrait

| □ Auto-Mode | □ Document Image Type | □ Sharpness | Other Functions.. |

Document Size

Paper Size	Sp. A0	Sp. A1	Sp. A2	Sp. A3	A4
	Sp. A1	**Sp. A1**	Sp. A1	Sp. A1	Sp. A1
	Sp. A2	Sp. A2	**Sp. A2**	Sp. A2	Sp. A2
	Sp. A3	Sp. A3	Sp. A3	Sp. A3	Sp. A3
	A4	A4	A4	A4	**A4**

Landscape

| □ Auto-Mode | □ Document Image Type | □ Sharpness | Other Functions.. |

Document Size

Paper Size	Sp. A0	Sp. A1	Sp. A2	Sp. A3	A4
	Sp. A0	Sp. A0	Sp. A0	Sp. A0	Sp. A0
	Sp. A1	**Sp. A1**	Sp. A1	Sp. A1	Sp. A1
	Sp. A2	Sp. A2	**Sp. A2**	Sp. A2	Sp. A2
	Sp. A3	Sp. A3	Sp. A3	**Sp. A3**	Sp. A3
	A4	A4	A4	A4	**A4**

Synchronized

| □ Auto-Mode | □ Document Image Type | □ Sharpness | Other Functions.. |

Document Width

Paper Width (Paper is cut according to the original length)	Sp. A0	Sp. A1	Sp. A2	Sp. A3	A4
	Sp. A0	Sp. A0	Sp. A0	Sp. A0	Sp. A0
	Sp. A1	**Sp. A1**	Sp. A1	Sp. A1	Sp. A1
	Sp. A2	Sp. A2	**Sp. A2**	Sp. A2	Sp. A2
	Sp. A3	Sp. A3	Sp. A3	Sp. A3	Sp. A3
	A4	A4	A4	A4	A4

3.3 Selecting the Document Image Type
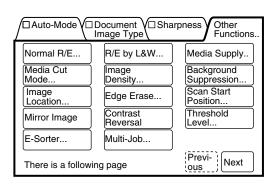
The correct Document Image Type must be selected to ensure that copies match the appearance of the original. The available document image types are listed below.

Line	Most suitable for documents that consist of characters and lines. Produces sharp images.
Line/Picture	Most suitable for documents that consist of a mixture of characters, lines, and pictures. Produces sharp characters and lines, and high levels of gradation within the pictures.
Picture	Most suitable for printed matter such as posters and pamphlets. Produces smooth gradation levels; suppresses moiré patterns.
Photo	Most suitable for photographs. Produces smooth gradation levels.
Line (Dark)	Most suitable for line documents with relatively dark backgrounds. Background suppression can be used to produce sharp images.
Line (Transparent)	Most suitable for transparent documents. Suppresses blurring around the edges of characters.
Line (DIAZO)	Most suitable for blueprints.
Line (Cut & Paste)	Most suitable for originals with drastic density changes, for example, cut and paste documents.
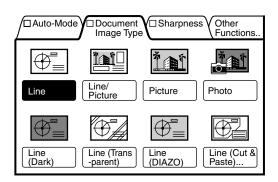
(Note)
- *[Picture] and [Photo] cannot be selected when [Background Suppression] is set to [Auto].*
- *Adjust the background suppression manually if horizontal lines appear on the lead edge of the pasted document when [Line (Cut & Paste)] selected.*

Procedure
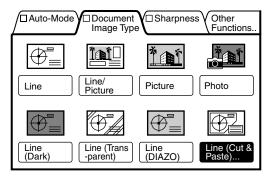
1 Select the [Document Image Type] tab from the copier's menu screen.

The document image type screen will display.

Auto-Mode	Document Image Type	Sharpness	Other Functions..

Line	Line/Picture	Picture	Photo
Line (Dark)	Line (Trans-parent)	Line (DIAZO)	Line (Cut & Paste)...
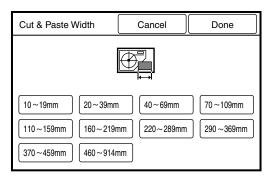
2 Select the image type that best matches the document that is to be copied.

Auto-Mode	Document Image Type	Sharpness	Other Functions..

Line	Line/Picture	Picture	Photo
Line (Dark)	Line (Trans-parent)	Line (DIAZO)	**Line (Cut & Paste)...**
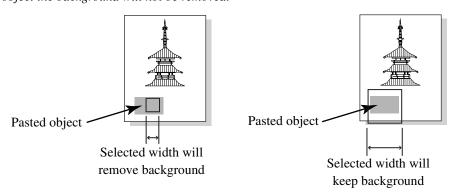
3 Set up the [Cut & Paste Width] if [Line (Cut & Paste)] is selected.

(Note) *The value selected represents a square "sight window" that will determine if the pasted object(s) will have the background reproduced.*

Cut & Paste Width	Cancel	Done

10~19mm	20~39mm	40~69mm	70~109mm
110~159mm	160~219mm	220~289mm	290~369mm
370~459mm	460~914mm		
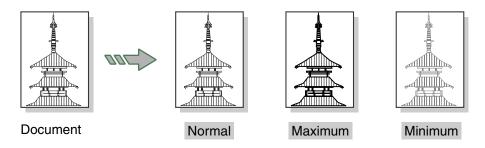
(Note) • *Select the proper Cut & Paste Width to remove or keep the background, as shown in the following illustrations. If Cut & Paste Width is smaller than the pasted object the background will be removed from that object but, if the width is larger than the object the background will not be removed.*

Pasted object —

Selected width will remove background

Pasted object —

Selected width will keep background

4 Press the [Done] button after the settings are made.

3.4 Adjusting Image Sharpness
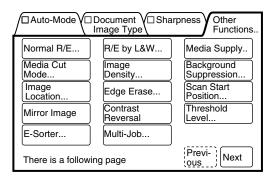
This function sharpens or blurs image outlines.

Maximum	Strengthens outlines.
Normal	Does not adjust the strength of the outlines.
Minimum	Subdues outlines.

Document   Normal   Maximum   Minimum

Procedure
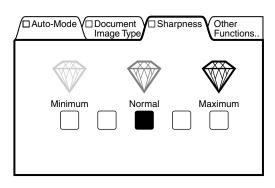
1 Select the [Sharpness] tab from the copier's menu screen.

☐Auto-Mode | ☐Document Image Type | ☐Sharpness | Other Functions..

Normal R/E...	R/E by L&W...	Media Supply..
Media Cut Mode...	Image Density...	Background Suppression...
Image Location...	Edge Erase...	Scan Start Position...
Mirror Image	Contrast Reversal	Threshold Level...
E-Sorter...	Multi-Job...	

There is a following page   Previous   Next

The Sharpness screen will display.

☐Auto-Mode | ☐Document Image Type | ☐Sharpness | Other Functions..

Minimum   Normal   Maximum

2 Select the desired sharpness level from the five available options.

3.5 Reduction and Enlargement

The 6030/6050 Wide Format Copier/Printer features a wide range of reduction and enlargement (R/E) options. The two main R/E categories are Normal Reduction and Enlargement (Normal R/E) and Reduction and Enlargement by Length and Width (R/E by L&W).

Copies made using the Normal R/E selections maintain the same aspect ratio as the original, that is, the ratio of the length to the width of the copy is the same as the ratio of the original. The R/E by L&W feature enables the user to set up different R/E values affecting the length and/or the width of the copy, thereby changing the aspect ratio of the copy. Examples of both Normal R/E and R/E by L&W appear in the following descriptions.
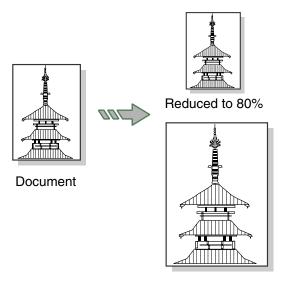
Normal R/E

The following Normal R/E selections are available

100%	Produces a copy that is the same size as the original.
R/E Presets	Enables the user to select one of the six R/E presets.
Variable	Enables the user to specify an R/E percentage in a range from 25% to 400%, in increments of 0.1%.
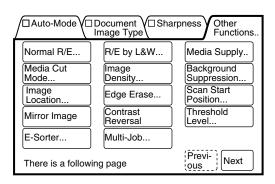
(Note) • *The manual mode will automatically activate if [Normal R/E] is selected when the machine is in the auto mode. If the auto mode is selected after the [Normal R/E] values have been set up, all settings will be invalidated*

Reduced to 80%

Document

Enlarged to 150%

Procedure
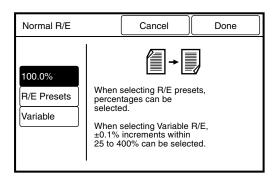
1 Select [Normal R/E] from the menu screen's [Other Functions] tab.

☐ Auto-Mode	☐ Document Image Type	☐ Sharpness	Other Functions..
Normal R/E...	R/E by L&W...	Media Supply..	
Media Cut Mode...	Image Density...	Background Suppression...	
Image Location...	Edge Erase...	Scan Start Position...	
Mirror Image	Contrast Reversal	Threshold Level...	
E-Sorter...	Multi-Job...		

There is a following page   Previous   Next
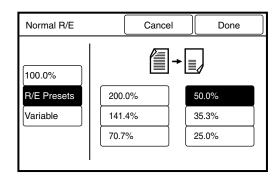
The [Normal R/E] screen will display.

2 Select the enlargement/ reduction method from [100.0%], [R/E Presets], or [Variable].

Normal R/E	Cancel	Done

100.0%

R/E Presets

Variable

When selecting R/E presets, percentages can be selected.

When selecting Variable R/E, ±0.1% increments within 25 to 400% can be selected.

↳ When [R/E Presets] is selected
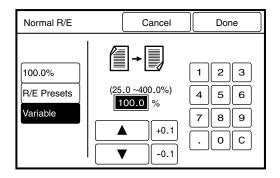
Select the required percentage from the menu buttons.

Normal R/E	Cancel	Done

100.0%

R/E Presets

Variable

200.0%	50.0%
141.4%	35.3%
70.7%	25.0%

↳ When [Variable] is selected

Set the required percentage (25% to 400%) using the [▲] and [▼] buttons, or with the on-screen keypad.

(Note) *Press the [+0.1] and [–0.1] buttons to increase or decrease the values in increments of 0.1%.*

Normal R/E	Cancel	Done

100.0%

R/E Presets

Variable

(25.0 ~400.0%)
100.0 %

▲ +0.1

▼ –0.1

1	2	3
4	5	6
7	8	9
.	0	C

3 Press the [Done] button. The [Normal R/E] parameters will be set up, and the copier's menu screen will reappear.

R/E by L&W
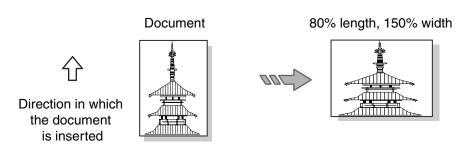
The following R/E by L&W selections are available.

Percentage	Enables the user to set up the length and width percentages in a range from 25% to 400%, in increments of 0.1%.
R/E Auto Calc	Specifies the length and width of the document and the length and width of the copy. The reduction or enlargement values are calculated and set up automatically in a range from 25% to 400%.
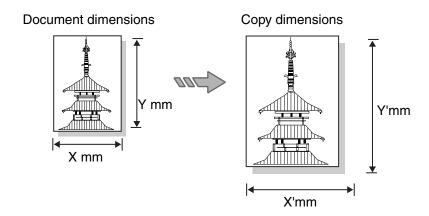
(Note) *The manual mode will activate if [R/E by L&W] is selected when copying in the auto mode. If the auto mode is selected after the [R/E by L&W] values have been set up, all settings will be invalidated.*

Percentage

Document   80% length, 150% width

Direction in which
the document
is inserted

R/E Auto Calc

Document dimensions   Copy dimensions

Y mm

X mm

Y'mm

X'mm
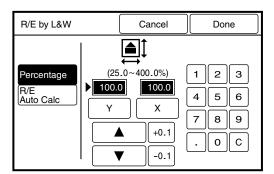
Procedure

1 Select [R/E by L&W] from the menu screen's [Other Functions] tab.

Auto-Mode	Document Image Type	Sharpness	Other Functions..
Normal R/E...	R/E by L&W...		Media Supply..
Media Cut Mode...	Image Density...		Background Suppression...
Image Location...	Edge Erase...		Scan Start Position...
Mirror Image	Contrast Reversal		Threshold Level...
E-Sorter...	Multi-Job...		
There is a following page		Previous	Next

The [R/E by L&W] screen will display.

2 Select the R/E by L&W method from either [Percentage] or [R/E Auto Calc].

```
R/E by L&W          Cancel          Done

Percentage          (25.0~400.0%)     1  2  3
R/E                 ▶ 100.0   100.0   4  5  6
Auto Calc             Y        X      7  8  9
                      ▲       +0.1    .  0  C
                      ▼       -0.1
```
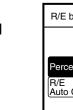
↳ When [Percentage] is selected

1. Press the [Y] or the [X] button to move the [▶] indicator to the field (Y or X) that is to be set up.

```
R/E by L&W          Cancel          Done

Percentage          (25.0~400.0%)     1  2  3
R/E                 ▶ 100.0   100.0   4  5  6
Auto Calc             Y        X      7  8  9
                      ▲       +0.1    .  0  C
                      ▼       -0.1
```

2. Select the required percentage (25% to 400%) using the [▲] and [▼] buttons or the on-screen keypad.
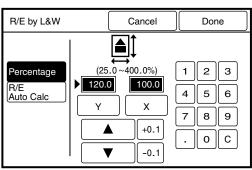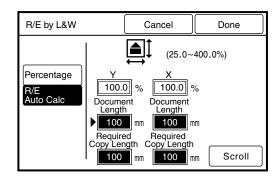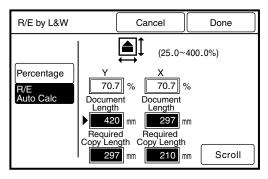
(Note) *Press the [+0.1] and [–0.1] buttons to increase or decrease the values in increments of 0.1%.*

```
R/E by L&W          Cancel          Done

Percentage          (25.0~400.0%)     1  2  3
R/E                 ▶ 120.0   100.0   4  5  6
Auto Calc             Y        X      7  8  9
                      ▲       +0.1    .  0  C
                      ▼       -0.1
```

1. Move the [▶] indicator with the [Scroll] button to select the field that is to be set up.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ R/E by L&W        │  Cancel  │  │   Done   │      │
│                      ▲                            │
│                     ▃▌↕   (25.0~400.0%)           │
│ ┌──────────┐       ↔                              │
│ │Percentage│      Y          X                    │
│ └──────────┘   ┌──────┐   ┌──────┐                │
│  R/E           │100.0 │ % │100.0 │ %              │
│  Auto Calc     └──────┘   └──────┘                │
│                Document    Document               │
│                Length      Length                 │
│              ▶ ┌──────┐   ┌──────┐                │
│                │ 100  │ mm│ 100  │ mm             │
│                └──────┘   └──────┘                │
│                Required    Required               │
│                Copy Length Copy Length            │
│                ┌──────┐   ┌──────┐  ┌────────┐    │
│                │ 100  │ mm│ 100  │ mm│ Scroll │   │
│                └──────┘   └──────┘  └────────┘    │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

2. Enter the [Document Length] and the [Required Copy Length] values using the keypad.
   The percentages will be automatically calculated and displayed at the top. The calculated results must be within a range of 25% to 400%.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ R/E by L&W        │  Cancel  │  │   Done   │      │
│                      ▲                            │
│                     ▃▌↕   (25.0~400.0%)           │
│ ┌──────────┐       ↔                              │
│ │Percentage│      Y          X                    │
│ └──────────┘   ┌──────┐   ┌──────┐                │
│  R/E           │ 70.7 │ % │ 70.7 │ %              │
│  Auto Calc     └──────┘   └──────┘                │
│                Document    Document               │
│                Length      Length                 │
│              ▶ ┌──────┐   ┌──────┐                │
│                │ 420  │ mm│ 297  │ mm             │
│                └──────┘   └──────┘                │
│                Required    Required               │
│                Copy Length Copy Length            │
│                ┌──────┐   ┌──────┐  ┌────────┐    │
│                │ 297  │ mm│ 210  │ mm│ Scroll │   │
│                └──────┘   └──────┘  └────────┘    │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

3 Press the [Done] button.
   The [R/E by L&W] parameters will be set up, and the copier's menu screen will reappear.

3.6 Selecting the Media Supply

This function selects the media supply when copying in the manual mode.
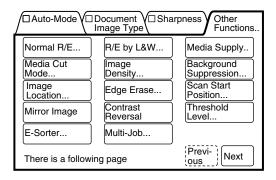
Important *The optional (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit is required when making manually fed copies.*
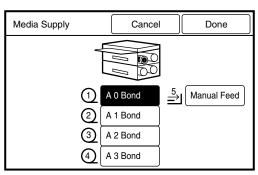
(Note) • *The manual mode will activate if [Media Supply] is selected when in the auto mode. If the auto mode is specified after the [Media Supply] values have been set, all settings will be invalidated.*
• *Only single copies can be made using the manual feeder when the media size exceeds B/A3 and A/A4.*

Procedure
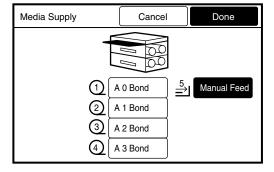
1 Select [Media Supply] from the menu screen's [Other Functions] tab.

□Auto-Mode	□Document Image Type	□Sharpness	Other Functions..
Normal R/E...	R/E by L&W...	Media Supply..
Media Cut Mode...	Image Density...	Background Suppression...
Image Location...	Edge Erase...	Scan Start Position...
Mirror Image	Contrast Reversal	Threshold Level...
E-Sorter...	Multi-Job...	

There is a following page   Previous   Next

The [Media Supply] screen will display.

Media Supply	Cancel	Done

① A 0 Bond   ⁵⟶| Manual Feed
② A 1 Bond
③ A 2 Bond
④ A 3 Bond

2 Select the roll that is to serve as the media supply, or select [Manual Feed] is copying cut sheet media.

Media Supply	Cancel	Done

① A 0 Bond   ⁵⟶| Manual Feed
② A 1 Bond
③ A 2 Bond
④ A 3 Bond

3 Press the [Done] button.
The [Media Supply] parameters will be set up, and the screen will return to the copier's menu screen.

3.7 Media Cut Modes

This function selects the cutting method for roll media.
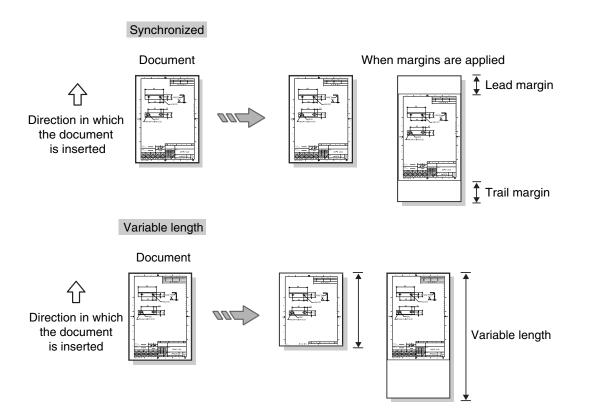
Standard	Cuts the roll media to a standard size. The direction the document is to be scanned can be selected from either [Portrait] or [Landscape].
Synchronized	Cuts the roll media to the same size as the original, or to the user-specified reduction/enlargement value. The lead and trail margins also can be set up, in a range from 0 to 999 mm. 210 mm is set as the cut length if the [Document Length × Copy Percentage] calculation is less than 210 mm.
Variable Length	Cuts the roll media to a user-specified length of between 210 mm and 15,000 mm (See [Important] below). The image on the copy will be cut off if the cut length specified by the user is too small. A blank trail margin will print if the user-specified cut length is too large.

Important *The maximum print length will differ based on the media width and the amount of installed memory.*

Note *• The [Variable Length] default values for each media size can be set up using the custom presets functions.Refer to the "Variable Length Preset" section in "5.3 Setting up the Copy Features" for further details.*
• A [Variable Length] value cannot be specified when in the auto mode.

Synchronized

Document   When margins are applied

Direction in which the document is inserted

Lead margin

Trail margin

Variable length

Document

Direction in which the document is inserted

Variable length

When [Standard] is specified as the media cut method, the location of the cut is based on the width of the roll media and the direction in which the document is scanned (see the table below).
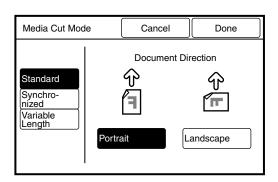
Media Series	Roll Media	Media Direction Specification	Cut Length	Media Size/Direction
ISO A	A0 (841mm)	Portrait	1189 mm	A0/Portrait
		Landscape	594 mm	A1/Landscape
	A1 (594mm)	Portrait	841 mm	A1/Portrait
		Landscape	420 mm	A2/Landscape
	A2 (420mm)	Portrait	594 mm	A2/Portrait
		Landscape	297 mm	A3/Landscape
	A3 (297mm)	Portrait	420 mm	A3/Portrait
		Landscape	210 mm	A4/Landscape
ISO B	B1 (707mm)	Portrait	1000 mm	B1/Portrait
		Landscape	500 mm	B2/Landscape
	B2 (500mm)	Portrait	707 mm	B2/Portrait
		Landscape	353 mm	B3/Landscape
	B3 (353mm)	Portrait	500 mm	B3/Portrait
		Landscape	250 mm	B4/Landscape
	B4 (250mm)	Portrait	353 mm	B4/Portrait
		Landscape	176 mm	N/A
SP. A-1	SP. A0 (880 mm)	Portrait	1,230 mm	SP. A0 (880 mm)/Portrait
		Landscape	625 mm	SP. A1 (625 mm)/Landscape
	SP. A1 (625 mm)	Portrait	880 mm	SP. A1 (625 mm)/Portrait
		Landscape	440 mm	SP. A2 (440 mm)/Landscape
	SP. A2 (440 mm)	Portrait	625 mm	SP. A2 (440 mm)/Portrait
		Landscape	312 mm	SP. A3 (312 mm)/Landscape
SP. A-2	SP. A1 (620 mm)	Portrait	871 mm	SP. A1 (620 mm)/Portrait
		Landscape	435 mm	SP. A2 (435 mm)/Landscape
	SP. A2 (435 mm)	Portrait	620 mm	SP. A2 (435 mm)/Portrait
		Landscape	310 mm	SP. A3 (310 mm)/Landscape
ARCH	36"	Portrait	48"	E/Portrait
		Landscape	36"	D/Landscape
	24"	Portrait	36"	D/Portrait
		Landscape	18"	C/Landscape
	18"	Portrait	24"	C/Portrait
		Landscape	12"	B/Landscape
	12"	Portrait	18"	B/Portrait
		Landscape	9"	A/Landscape

Media Series	Roll Media	Media Direction Specification	Cut Length	Media Size/Direction
ANSI	34"	Portrait	44"	E/Portrait
		Landscape	34"	D/Landscape
	22"	Portrait	34"	D/Portrait
		Landscape	17"	C/Landscape
	17"	Portrait	22"	C/Portrait
		Landscape	11"	B/Landscape
	11"	Portrait	17"	B/Portrait
		Landscape	8.5"	A/Landscape
ARCH-30	E30 (30")	Portrait	42"	E/Portrait
		Landscape	N/A	N/A
	D (24")	Portrait	36"	D/Portrait
		Landscape	18"	D/Landscape
	C (18")	Portrait	24"	C/Portrait
		Landscape	12"	C/Landscape
	B (12")	Portrait	18"	B/Portrait
		Landscape	9"	B/Landscape

Procedure

1 Select [Media Cut Mode] from the menu screen's [Other Functions] tab.

Auto-Mode	Document Image Type	Sharpness	Other Functions..
Normal R/E...	R/E by L&W...		Media Supply..
Media Cut Mode...	Image Density...		Background Suppression...
Image Location...	Edge Erase...		Scan Start Position...
Mirror Image	Contrast Reversal		Threshold Level...
E-Sorter...	Multi-Job...		

There is a following page   Previous   Next

The [Media Cut Mode] screen will display.

Media Cut Mode	Cancel	Done

Document Direction

Standard / Synchronized / Variable Length

Portrait   Landscape

2 Select the media cut mode from [Standard], [Synchronized], or [Variable Length].

↳ When [Standard] is selected
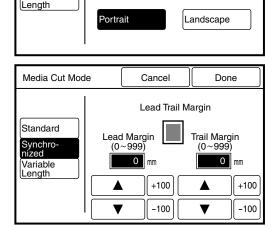
Select the direction in which the document will scanned from either [Portrait] or [Landscape].

(Refer to) *Refer to the table on the previous page for details on the various media sizes selections.*

Media Cut Mode	Cancel	Done

Document Direction

Standard / Synchronized / Variable Length

Portrait   Landscape

↳ When [Synchronized] is selected

Set up the lead and trail margin values (0 to 999 mm) using the [▲] and [▼] buttons.

(Note) *Press the [+100] or [–100] buttons to change the value in increments of 100.*

Media Cut Mode	Cancel	Done

Lead Trail Margin

Standard / Synchronized / Variable Length

Lead Margin (0~999)   0 mm   Trail Margin (0~999)   0 mm

▲ +100   ▲ +100
▼ −100   ▼ −100
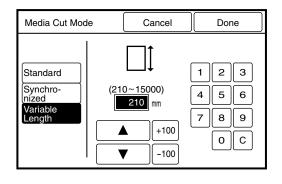
⮑ When [Variable Length] is
selected

Set up the variable length value
(210 to 15,000 mm) using either
the [▲] and [▼] buttons or the [0]
to [9] buttons on the on-screen
keypad.
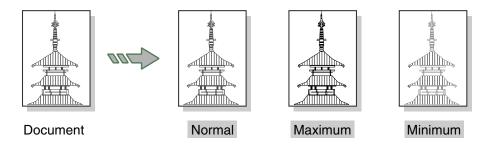
(Note) *Press the [+100] or [–100]
buttons to change the value in
increments of 100.*

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Media Cut Mode    │ Cancel │   │ Done │       │
│                                               │
│                      ┌─┐↕                     │
│ ┌──────────┐         │ │                      │
│ │ Standard │         └─┘         ┌─┐┌─┐┌─┐    │
│ ├──────────┤     (210~15000)     │1││2││3│    │
│ │ Synchro- │                     └─┘└─┘└─┘    │
│ │ nized    │      ┌───┐           ┌─┐┌─┐┌─┐   │
│ ├──────────┤      │210│ mm        │4││5││6│   │
│ │ Variable │      └───┘           └─┘└─┘└─┘   │
│ │ Length   │    ┌────┐ ┌────┐     ┌─┐┌─┐┌─┐   │
│ └──────────┘    │ ▲  │ │+100│     │7││8││9│   │
│                 └────┘ └────┘     └─┘└─┘└─┘   │
│                 ┌────┐ ┌────┐      ┌─┐┌─┐     │
│                 │ ▼  │ │−100│      │0││C│     │
│                 └────┘ └────┘      └─┘└─┘     │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```
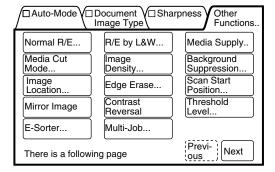
3 Press the [Done] button.
The [Media Cut Mode] parameters
will be set up, and the screen will
return to the copier's menu screen.

3.8 Image Density

Adjusts the density (lightness/darkness) of the copy. The density can be selected from nine levels, minimum to maximum.

Document	Normal	Maximum	Minimum

Procedure

1 Select [Image Density] on the menu screen's [Other Functions] tab.
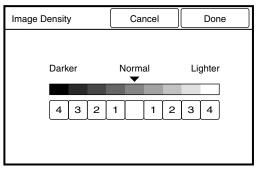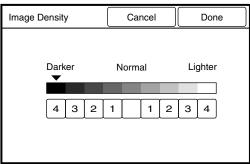
The [Image Density] screen will display.

(Note) *The Image Density also can be set up using the image density keys on the copier control panel.*

2 Select the image density from the nine available levels.
Move the [▼] mark to the required density setting.

3 Press the [Done] button.
The copier's menu screen will reappear.

3.9 Background Suppression
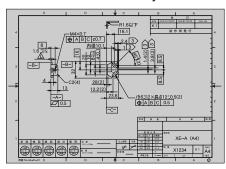
Background suppression subdues or removes unwanted detail (noise, background) from copies. The larger the value specified, the more the background is suppressed; the smaller the value specified, the less the background is suppressed.
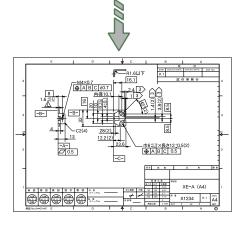
Auto Adjustment	Enables the suppression level to be selected from seven settings between [Minimum] and [Maximum].
Manual Adjustment	Enables the suppression level to be selected from thirty-nine settings between [Minimum] and [Maximum]. This method allows for fine adjustments to be made when the difference between the document's image area and the background is small.

(Note)   *The background level is sometimes difficult to detect automatically. For more information, refer to the next section, "Using [Background Suppression]."*
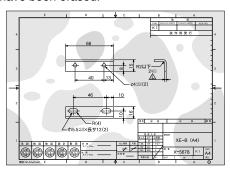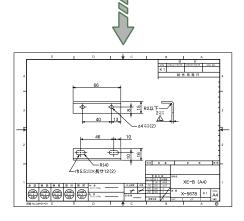
Example of an image, such as a blue-print, in which the entire background has been erased uniformly.

Example of an image in which the dark areas in the background of a document have been erased.

Using [Background Suppression]

Background Suppression technology detects the background level of originals that consist of text and lines. When a dark background is selected as the [Document Image Type], image loss may occur when copying a normal-to-light density document.

■ Background may not be suppressed in the following cases. Use manual adjustment instead.
  • The document background is extremely dark.
  • The document is torn or contains holes.

■ Use manual adjustment when the following are observed.
  • The lead edge of the copy becomes blurred.
  • Image loss occurs.
  • The background is not completely suppressed.

■ [Auto] adjustment of [Background Suppression] cannot be used when [Picture] or [Photo] is selected as the [Document Image Type].

■ Use manual adjustment for the following.
  • Complex color documents or photos and posters.
  • Documents with light colored horizontal line(s) or light color strings of text.
    Line/text length: Half of the document width.
    Line/text width: 1mm or more (excluding cases where the line/text density is dark)
  • The document has a low-density frame.
    The low-density edge may be detected as the background. As a consequence, the edges and ambient images are erased, or the background is not suppressed.
  • High line density documents such as maps. These documents may have more lines than background. The high density area may be detected as the background to be suppressed.

(Note)   *Although this function also can be performed using the Background Suppression keys on the copier control panel, the menu screen provides significantly more adjustment steps.*

Procedure
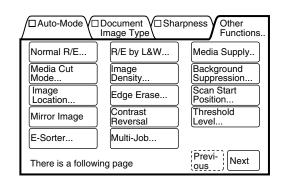
1 Select [Background Suppression] on the menu screen's [Other Functions] tab.

```
┌─────────┬──────────┬──────────┬────────┐
│☐Auto-Mode│☐Document  │☐Sharpness│Other   │
│          │ Image Type│          │Functions..│
├──────────┼──────────┼──────────┤
│Normal R/E...│R/E by L&W...│Media Supply..│
├──────────┼──────────┼──────────┤
│Media Cut │Image     │Background│
│Mode...   │Density...│Suppression...│
├──────────┼──────────┼──────────┤
│Image     │Edge Erase...│Scan Start│
│Location...│         │Position...│
├──────────┼──────────┼──────────┤
│Mirror Image│Contrast │Threshold │
│          │Reversal  │Level...  │
├──────────┼──────────┤
│E-Sorter...│Multi-Job...│
├──────────┴──────────┤
│There is a following page │Previ-│Next│
│                          │ous   │    │
└──────────────────────────┴──────┴────┘
```
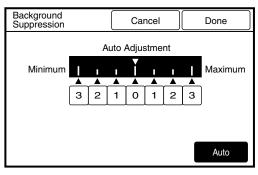
The [Background Suppression] screen will display.
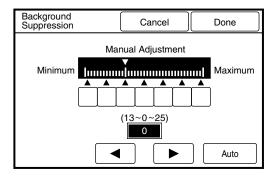
↳ To select automatic adjustment

1. Select the background suppression level from the seven available settings.

```
┌────────────────────────────────────┐
│Background      │ Cancel │  │ Done  │
│Suppression     └────────┘  └───────┘
│          Auto Adjustment          │
│                  ▼                │
│Minimum │ ' ' ' ' ' ' │ Maximum    │
│       ▲  ▲  ▲  ▲  ▲  ▲  ▲          │
│       3  2  1  0  1  2  3          │
│                                    │
│                          ┌──────┐  │
│                          │ Auto │  │
│                          └──────┘  │
└────────────────────────────────────┘
```

↳ To select manual adjustment

1. Press the [Auto] button.
   The Manual Adjustment screen will display.

```
┌────────────────────────────────────┐
│Background      │ Cancel │  │ Done  │
│Suppression     └────────┘  └───────┘
│         Manual Adjustment          │
│                  ▼                │
│Minimum ▐▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▐ Maximum  │
│       ▲  ▲  ▲  ▲  ▲  ▲  ▲          │
│      □  □  □  □  □  □  □            │
│            (13~0~25)               │
│              ┌───┐                 │
│              │ 0 │                 │
│              └───┘                 │
│      ┌────┐  ┌────┐  ┌──────┐       │
│      │ ◄  │  │ ►  │  │ Auto │       │
│      └────┘  └────┘  └──────┘       │
└────────────────────────────────────┘
```

2. Select the background suppression level from the thirty-nine available settings.
   Press one of the seven [▲] marks to set the initial suppression level, and then use the [◄] and [►] buttons to make the fine adjustments.
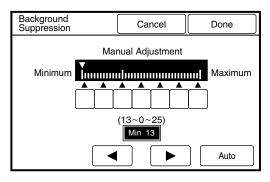
```
┌────────────────────────────────────┐
│Background      │ Cancel │  │ Done  │
│Suppression     └────────┘  └───────┘
│         Manual Adjustment          │
│       ▼                           │
│Minimum ▐▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▌▐ Maximum  │
│       ▲  ▲  ▲  ▲  ▲  ▲  ▲          │
│      □  □  □  □  □  □  □            │
│            (13~0~25)               │
│            ┌───────┐               │
│            │Min  13│               │
│            └───────┘               │
│      ┌────┐  ┌────┐  ┌──────┐       │
│      │ ◄  │  │ ►  │  │ Auto │       │
│      └────┘  └────┘  └──────┘       │
└────────────────────────────────────┘
```

2 Press the [Done] button.
The [Background Suppression] parameter will be set up, and the screen will return to the copier's menu screen.
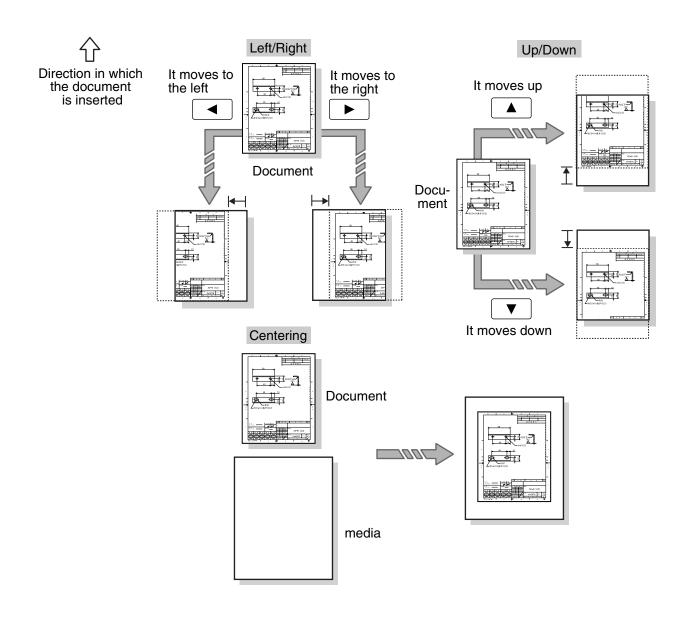
3.10 Image Location

The image location feature moves the location of the image on the copy.

Up/Down	Moves the image up/down in a range from 0 to +/–999 mm.
Left/Right	Moves the image left/right in a range from 0 to +/–500 mm.
Centering	Centers the image on the media when the image size and the media size are not the same.

(Note)
- *The amount of image movement on the copy is based on the media size. It is not affected by R/E settings.*
- *Image areas that overlap the edge of the media after being moved will be cut off when [Synchronized] is selected as the [Image Cut Mode].*
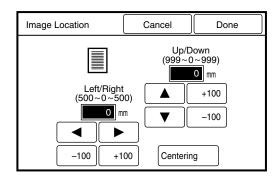
Direction in which the document is inserted

Left/Right

It moves to the left ◄

It moves to the right ►

Document

Up/Down

It moves up ▲

Document

It moves down ▼

Centering

Document

media

Procedure

1 Select [Image Location] from the menu screen's [Other Functions] tab.

```
┌─────────┐┌──────────┐┌──────────┐┌────────┐
│□Auto-Mode││□ Document ││□Sharpness││ Other  │
│         ││Image Type ││          ││Functions..│
├─────────────┬──────────────┬───────────────┤
│ Normal R/E..││ R/E by L&W...││ Media Supply..│
│ Media Cut   ││ Image        ││ Background    │
│ Mode...     ││ Density...   ││ Suppression...│
│ Image       ││              ││ Scan Start    │
│ Location... ││ Edge Erase...││ Position...   │
│ Mirror Image││ Contrast     ││ Threshold     │
│             ││ Reversal     ││ Level...      │
│ E-Sorter... ││ Multi-Job... ││               │
│                            ┌────────┐┌──────┐│
│ There is a following page  │Previ-  ││ Next ││
│                            │ous     ││      ││
└────────────────────────────┴────────┴──────┘
```

The [Image Location] screen will display.

```
┌────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Image Location    │ Cancel │ │ Done  │  │
├────────────────────────────────────────┤
│                      Up/Down            │
│         ▤            (999~0~999)         │
│                      ┌───┐              │
│                      │ 0 │ mm           │
│        Left/Right    └───┘              │
│        (500~0~500)  ┌───┐ ┌──────┐      │
│        ┌───┐        │ ▲ │ │ +100 │      │
│        │ 0 │ mm     └───┘ └──────┘      │
│        └───┘        ┌───┐ ┌──────┐      │
│      ┌───┐ ┌───┐    │ ▼ │ │ −100 │      │
│      │ ◄ │ │ ► │    └───┘ └──────┘      │
│      └───┘ └───┘                        │
│    ┌──────┐┌──────┐ ┌───────────┐       │
│    │ −100 ││ +100 │ │ Centering │       │
│    └──────┘└──────┘ └───────────┘       │
└────────────────────────────────────────┘
```
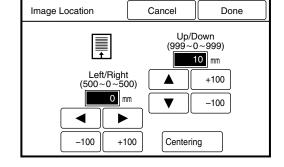
2 Set up the amount of image movement.

➡ To move the image up or down

Select the amount to move the image up or down (in a range from 0 to +/− 999 mm) using the [▲] and [▼] buttons.

(Note) *Press the [+100] and [−100] buttons to increase or decrease the values in increments of 100 mm.*

```
┌────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Image Location    │ Cancel │ │ Done  │  │
├────────────────────────────────────────┤
│                      Up/Down            │
│         ▤            (999~0~999)         │
│         ↑            ┌────┐             │
│                      │ 10 │ mm          │
│        Left/Right    └────┘             │
│        (500~0~500)  ┌───┐ ┌──────┐      │
│        ┌───┐        │ ▲ │ │ +100 │      │
│        │ 0 │ mm     └───┘ └──────┘      │
│        └───┘        ┌───┐ ┌──────┐      │
│      ┌───┐ ┌───┐    │ ▼ │ │ −100 │      │
│      │ ◄ │ │ ► │    └───┘ └──────┘      │
│      └───┘ └───┘                        │
│    ┌──────┐┌──────┐ ┌───────────┐       │
│    │ −100 ││ +100 │ │ Centering │       │
│    └──────┘└──────┘ └───────────┘       │
└────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

➡ To move the image left or right

Select the amount to move the image left or right (in a range from 0 to +/−500 mm) using the [◄] and [►] buttons.
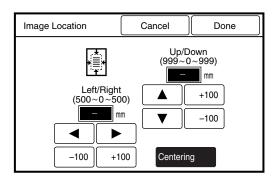
(Note) *Press the [+100] and [−100] buttons to increase or decrease the values in increments of 100 mm.*

```
┌────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Image Location    │ Cancel │ │ Done  │  │
├────────────────────────────────────────┤
│                      Up/Down            │
│        ▤→            (999~0~999)         │
│                      ┌───┐              │
│                      │ 0 │ mm           │
│        Left/Right    └───┘              │
│        (500~0~500)  ┌───┐ ┌──────┐      │
│        ┌────┐       │ ▲ │ │ +100 │      │
│        │ 20 │ mm    └───┘ └──────┘      │
│        └────┘       ┌───┐ ┌──────┐      │
│      ┌───┐ ┌───┐    │ ▼ │ │ −100 │      │
│      │ ◄ │ │ ► │    └───┘ └──────┘      │
│      └───┘ └───┘                        │
│    ┌──────┐┌──────┐ ┌───────────┐       │
│    │ −100 ││ +100 │ │ Centering │       │
│    └──────┘└──────┘ └───────────┘       │
└────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

⤵ To center the image

Press the [Centering] button.

Image Location		Cancel	Done

Up/Down
(999~0~999)

▢ mm

Left/Right
(500~0~500)

▢ mm

◄ ►

−100 +100

▲ +100

▼ −100

Centering

3 Press the [Done] button.
The [Image Location] parameters
are set up, and the screen will
return to the copier's menu screen.

3.11 Edge Erase
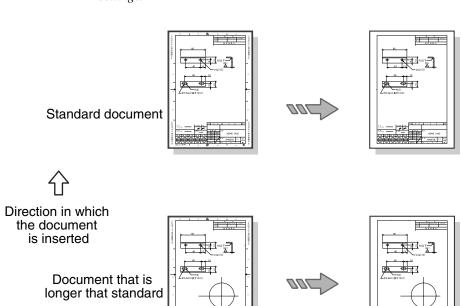
Edge erase removes image detail from the outer edges of the document (top, bottom, left, and right edges). Edge erase can be set up to erase from 0 to 50 mm of the edges, in increments of 1 mm.
Edge erase can only be used when copying on standard size media.
If edge erase is selected for a document that is longer than the standard size, the trail edge may copy blank.

Lead Edge Erase	Erases image detail from the lead edge (the edge fed into the scanner/top) of the document.
Trail Edge Erase	Erases image detail from the trail edge (bottom) of the document.
Left Erase	Erases image detail from the left edge of the document.
Right Erase	Erases image detail from the right edge of the document.

(Note) • *The edge erase settings are applied to the media. They are not affected by R/E settings.*

Standard document

⇧
Direction in which the document is inserted

Document that is longer that standard

Procedure

1 Select [Edge Erase] from the menu screen's [Other Functions] tab.

Auto-Mode	Document Image Type	Sharpness	Other Functions..
Normal R/E...	R/E by L&W...	Media Supply..	
Media Cut Mode...	Image Density...	Background Suppression...	
Image Location...	Edge Erase...	Scan Start Position...	
Mirror Image	Contrast Reversal	Threshold Level...	
E-Sorter...	Multi-Job...		

There is a following page   Previous | Next
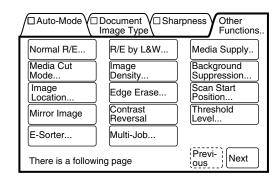
The [Edge Erase] screen will display.

Edge Erase	Cancel	Done

Lead Edge Erase	Trail Edge Erase	Left Erase	Right Erase
(0~50)	(0~50)	(0~50)	(0~50)
0 mm	0 mm	0 mm	0 mm
▲	▲	▲	▲
▼	▼	▼	▼
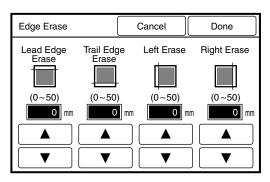
2 Select the amount of edge erase (from 0 to 50 mm) using the [▲] and [▼] buttons.
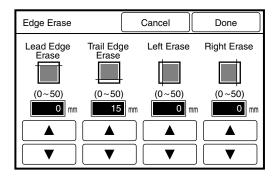
(Note) *The lead edge, trail edge, left edge, and right edge can be set up independently.*

Edge Erase	Cancel	Done

Lead Edge Erase	Trail Edge Erase	Left Erase	Right Erase
(0~50)	(0~50)	(0~50)	(0~50)
0 mm	15 mm	0 mm	0 mm
▲	▲	▲	▲
▼	▼	▼	▼

3 Press the [Done] button.
The [Edge Erase] parameters are set up, and the screen will return to the copier's menu screen.
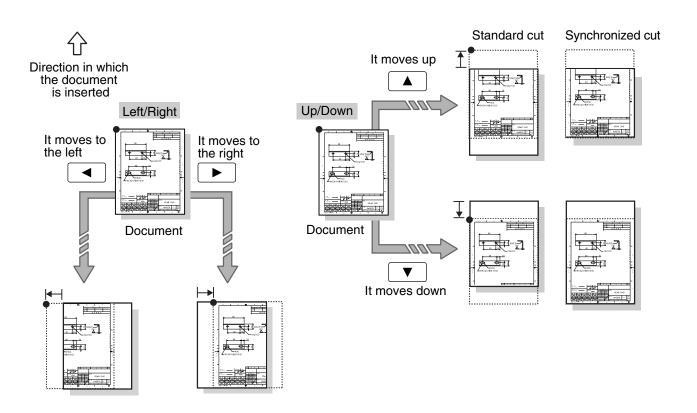
3.12 Scan Start Position

Document scanning (image acquisition) normally starts at the top, left-hand corner of the document. The scan start position feature enables the user to change the location where the scanner begins acquiring the image data. This feature is useful because it eliminates unnecessary image detail from copies. When [Synchronized] is selected as the [Media Cut Mode], the cut will occur at a point which is equal to the scan start position plus the length of the document.

Up/Down	Specifies the scan start position in a range from 0 to +/–999 mm (in 1 mm increments), with the top edge of the document set as a standard [0].
Left/Right	Specifies the scan start position in a range of 0 to +/–999 mm (in increments of 1 mm) with the top left edge of the document set as a standard [0].

(Note) • *The scan starting position is applied to the media. It is not affected by R/E settings.*

Procedure

1 Select [Scan Start Position] from the menu screen's [Other Functions] tab.

Auto-Mode	Document Image Type	Sharpness	Other Functions..
Normal R/E...	R/E by L&W...		Media Supply..
Media Cut Mode...	Image Density...		Background Suppression...
Image Location...	Edge Erase...		Scan Start Position...
Mirror Image	Contrast Reversal		Threshold Level...
E-Sorter...	Multi-Job...		
There is a following page		Previous	Next

The [Scan Start Position] screen will display.

Scan Start Position | Cancel | Done

Up/Down (999~0~999) 0 mm

Left/Right (500~0~500) 0 mm

▲ +100
▼ −100

◄ ►

−100 +100

2 Set up the up/down scan start position (in a range from 0 to +/− 999 mm) using the [▲] and [▼] buttons.

(Note) *Press the [+100] and [−100] buttons to increase or decrease the values in increments of 100 mm.*
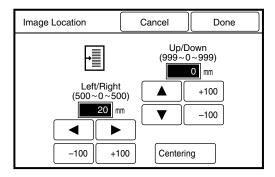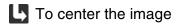
Scan Start Position | Cancel | Done

Up/Down (999~0~999) 25 mm

Left/Right (500~0~500) 0 mm

▲ +100
▼ −100

◄ ►

−100 +100

3 Set up the left/right scan start position (in a range from 0 to +/− 500 mm) using the [◄] and [►] buttons.

(Note) *Press the [+100] and [−100] buttons to increase or decrease the values in increments of 100 mm.*

Scan Start Position | Cancel | Done

Up/Down (999~0~999) 0 mm

Left/Right (500~0~500) 15 mm

▲ +100
▼ −100

◄ ►

−100 +100
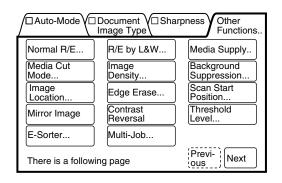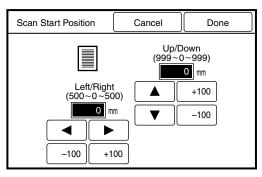
4 Press the [Done] button. The [Scan Start Position] parameters are set, and the screen will return to the copier's menu screen.
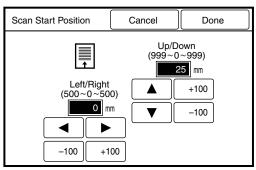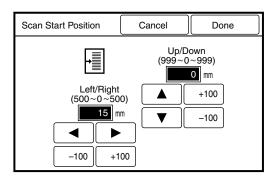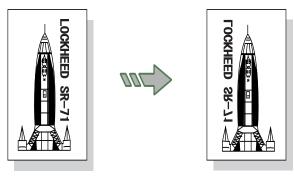
3.13 Mirror Image

The mirror image feature inverts the scanned image. The right side of the copy will have a blank margin if the scanned image is smaller than the media used.
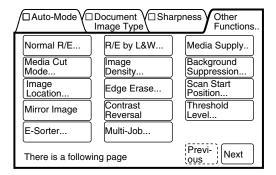
Input image   Output image

Procedure

1 Display the menu screen's [Other Functions] tab.

□ Auto-Mode	□ Document Image Type	□ Sharpness	Other Functions..
Normal R/E...	R/E by L&W...	Media Supply..	
Media Cut Mode...	Image Density...	Background Suppression...	
Image Location...	Edge Erase...	Scan Start Position...	
Mirror Image	Contrast Reversal	Threshold Level...	
E-Sorter...	Multi-Job...		

There is a following page   Previous | Next
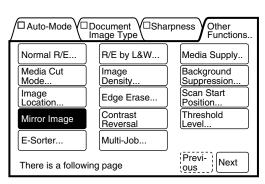
2 Press the [Mirror Image] button. The button will highlight and the mirror image feature will be enabled for the copy job.
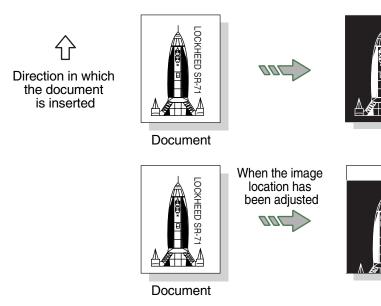
(Note)   *Press the [Mirror Image] button again to cancel the setting.*
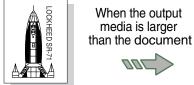
□ Auto-Mode	□ Document Image Type	□ Sharpness	Other Functions..
Normal R/E...	R/E by L&W...	Media Supply..	
Media Cut Mode...	Image Density...	Background Suppression...	
Image Location...	Edge Erase...	Scan Start Position...	
Mirror Image	Contrast Reversal	Threshold Level...	
E-Sorter...	Multi-Job...		

There is a following page   Previous | Next

3.14 Invert Image

The invert image (contrast reversal) feature reverses the black and white contrast of an image. Only the scanned image area will be reversed. If the selected media is larger than the scanned image, the areas outside of the image will copy in white. The margins will copy in white regardless of the contrast reversal settings.

⇧
Direction in which
the document
is inserted

LOCKHEED SR-71

Document

LOCKHEED SR-71

LOCKHEED SR-71

Document

When the image
location has
been adjusted

LOCKHEED SR-71

LOCKHEED SR-71

Document

When the output
media is larger
than the document

LOCKHEED SR-71

Procedure

1 Display the menu screen's [Other Functions] tab.

```
┌─────────┬──────────┬──────────┬──────────┐
│□Auto-Mode│□Document │□Sharpness│Other     │
│          │Image Type│          │Functions.│
├─────────┬┴──────────┼──────────┤          │
│Normal R/E...│R/E by L&W...│Media Supply..│
│Media Cut    │Image        │Background    │
│Mode...      │Density...   │Suppression...│
│Image        │Edge Erase...│Scan Start    │
│Location...  │             │Position...   │
│Mirror Image │Contrast     │Threshold     │
│             │Reversal     │Level...      │
│E-Sorter...  │Multi-Job... │              │
│             │             │┌Previ-┐┌Next┐ │
│There is a following page   │└ous───┘└────┘ │
└────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

2 Press the [Contrast Reversal] button.
The button will highlight and contrast reversal will be applied to the scanned image data.

(Note) *Press the [Contrast Reversal] button once more to cancel the setting.*

```
┌─────────┬──────────┬──────────┬──────────┐
│□Auto-Mode│□Document │□Sharpness│Other     │
│          │Image Type│          │Functios. │
├─────────┬┴──────────┼──────────┤          │
│Normal R/E...│R/E by L&W...│Media Supply..│
│Media Cut    │Image        │Background    │
│Mode...      │Density...   │Suppression...│
│Image        │Edge Erase...│Scan Start    │
│Location...  │             │Position...   │
│Mirror Image │Contrast     │Threshold     │
│             │Reversal     │Level...      │
│E-Sorter...  │Multi-Job... │              │
│             │             │┌Previ-┐┌Next┐ │
│There is a following page   │└ous───┘└────┘ │
└────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```
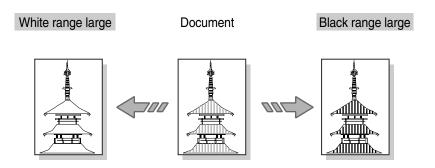
3.15 Threshold Level
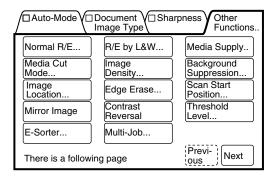
Threshold level assigns black or white values to a document's gray scale colors.

On	Assigns black or white to gray scale colors. The threshold for judging black and white can be specified.
Off	Leaves the gray scale colors as they are.

White range large   Document   Black range large
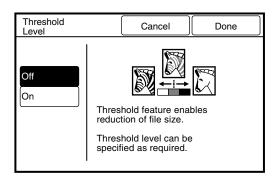
Procedure

1 Select [Threshold Level] from the menu screen's [Other Functions] tab.

```
┌─Auto-Mode─┐┌─Document──┐┌─Sharpness─┐┌─Other────┐
│□Auto-Mode ││□Document  ││□Sharpness ││ Functions.│
│           ││ Image Type││           ││          │
│ ┌───────────┐ ┌───────────┐ ┌───────────┐
│ │Normal R/E...│ │R/E by L&W...│ │Media Supply..│
│ ┌───────────┐ ┌───────────┐ ┌───────────┐
│ │Media Cut  │ │Image      │ │Background │
│ │Mode...    │ │Density... │ │Suppression...│
│ ┌───────────┐ ┌───────────┐ ┌───────────┐
│ │Image      │ │Edge Erase...│ │Scan Start │
│ │Location...│ │           │ │Position...│
│ ┌───────────┐ ┌───────────┐ ┌───────────┐
│ │Mirror Image│ │Contrast  │ │Threshold  │
│ │           │ │Reversal  │ │Level...   │
│ ┌───────────┐ ┌───────────┐
│ │E-Sorter...│ │Multi-Job...│
│                              ┌──────┐┌────┐
│ There is a following page    │Previ-││Next│
│                              │ous   ││    │
└──────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

The [Threshold Level] screen will display.

```
┌────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Threshold      ┌────────┐  ┌────────┐   │
│ Level          │ Cancel │  │  Done  │   │
│                └────────┘  └────────┘   │
│                                         │
│ ┌────┐                                  │
│ │Off │                                  │
│ ├────┤                                  │
│ │On  │         Threshold feature enables│
│ └────┘         reduction of file size.  │
│                                         │
│                Threshold level can be   │
│                specified as required.   │
└────────────────────────────────────────┘
```
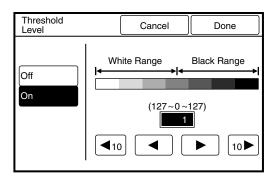
2 Select either [On] or [Off].

↳ When the threshold level is set to [On]

Set the threshold value (0 to 127) for recognizing white or black with the use of the [◄] and [►] buttons.

(Note) *Press the [◄10] and [10►] buttons to increase or decrease the values in increments of 10 mm.*

Threshold Level		Cancel	Done

White Range   Black Range

(127～0～127)

1

◄10   ◄   ►   10►

Off
On

3 Press the [Done] button.

The [Threshold Level] parameters will be set up, and the screen will return to the copier's menu screen.

3.16 Sorting Using E-Sorter
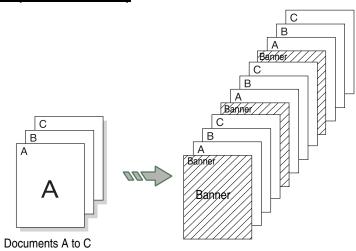
The E-Sort feature enables the user to sort and print multiple sets of copies. The copies may be sorted into sets [Collated] or sorted into a predetermined distribution pattern [Program]. The copy features for each document also can be set up so that the same document will have the same settings in every set. Banner sheets also can be inserted when [E-Sort] is selected. The group number and time will be printed on the banner sheet.

Off	Does not sort.
Collated (Sorts into sets)	Prints and sorts copies into collated sets.
Program (Sort preset)	Prints and sorts copies based on a programmed distribution pattern which is defined using the Program Sort feature in the custom presets.
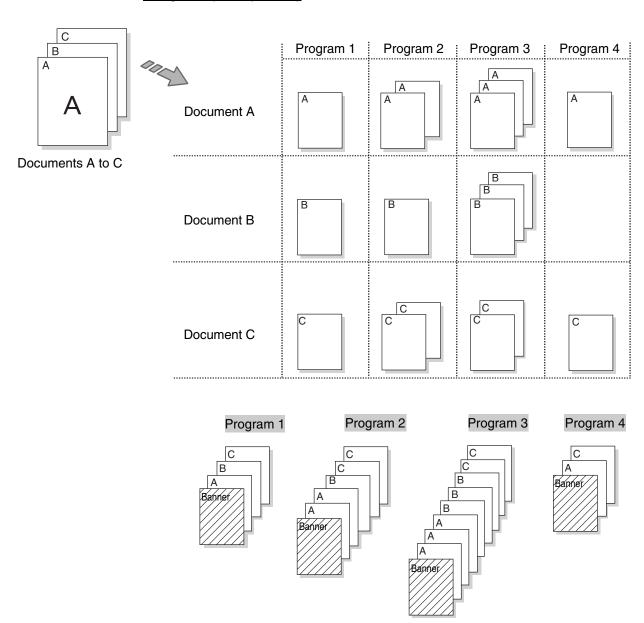
(Note) • *Copies can be set up to print in either ascending order or descending order. Refer to "Output Order Preset" in "5.3 Setting up the Copy Features".*

- **Collated (sorts into sets)**

Documents A to C

- **Program (Sort preset)**

Documents A to C

	Program 1	Program 2	Program 3	Program 4
Document A	A	A A	A A A	A
Document B	B	B	B B B	
Document C	C	C C	C C	C

Program 1	Program 2	Program 3	Program 4
C B A Banner	C C B A A Banner	C C B B A A A Banner	C A Banner
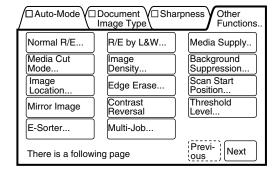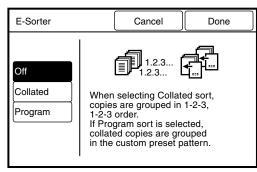
(Note) *Multiple sets of a program can be printed by entering the quantity during Program E-Sort setup.*

Procedure

1 Select [E-Sorter] from the menu screen's [Other Functions] tab.

☐ Auto-Mode	☐ Document Image Type	☐ Sharpness	Other Functions..

Normal R/E...	R/E by L&W...	Media Supply..
Media Cut Mode...	Image Density...	Background Suppression...
Image Location...	Edge Erase...	Scan Start Position...
Mirror Image	Contrast Reversal	Threshold Level...
E-Sorter...	Multi-Job...	

There is a following page   Previous | Next

The [E-Sorter] screen will display.

E-Sorter   Cancel   Done

Off

Collated

Program

1.2.3...
1.2.3...

When selecting Collated sort, copies are grouped in 1-2-3, 1-2-3 order.
If Program sort is selected, collated copies are grouped in the custom preset pattern.

Procedure (Off - Uncollated)

1 Select [Off].

2 Press the [Done] button.

3 Insert the documents to make copies (copies of your documents will be output in a set order 1-1-1, 2-2-2, 3-3-3).
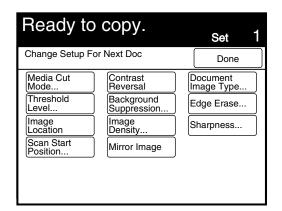
Procedure (Collated)

1 Select [Collated] as the sorting method.

2 Select whether or not to insert a banner sheet ([No] or [Yes]).

3 Select the number of sets on the numeric keypad.

```
E-Sorter                    Cancel        Done

                                        Banner Sheet
 Off                          1.2.3...
                              1.2.3...
 Collated                                Insert banner
                          Collated copies sheets with
 Program                  are grouped in  number printed
                          1-2-3, 1-2-3 order.  No

                                         Yes
```

4 Press the [Done] button.
The [E-Sorter] parameters are set up. The screen will return to the copier's menu.

5 Insert the first document from the document set in the scanner.
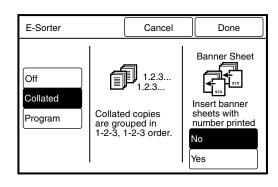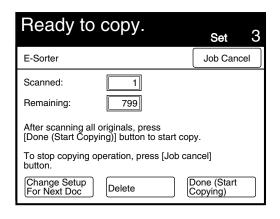The [E-Sorter Collated] screen will display.

6 Check the copy. If the copy features are OK, continue at step 10.

7 Press [Delete] if you need to delete the last document scanned.

```
Ready to copy.
                                   Set    3
 E-Sorter                          Job Cancel

 Scanned:          1

 Remaining:       799

 After scanning all originals, press
 [Done (Start Copying)] button to start copy.

 To stop copying operation, press [Job cancel]
 button.
 Change Setup                     Done (Start
 For Next Doc      Delete          Copying)
```

8 Press [Change Setup] if you need to change any of the copy features of a scanned document.
The [Change Setup] screen will display.

9 Select the desired feature buttons. Select the new settings. Select [Done] to return to the [Change Setup] screen. Select [Done] on the [Change Setup] screen.

```
Ready to copy.
                                   Set    1
 Change Setup For Next Doc          Done

 Media Cut      Contrast         Document
 Mode...        Reversal         Image Type...
 Threshold      Background
 Level...       Suppression...   Edge Erase...
 Image          Image
 Location       Density...       Sharpness...
 Scan Start
 Position...    Mirror Image
```

10 Insert the next document to be copied. If needed, select additional features. Repeat step 6 for each document.

11 When all the documents are scanned, select [Done].

12 Press the <Stop Copy> key or the <Clear all> key to stop the operation.

Procedure (Program E-Sort)

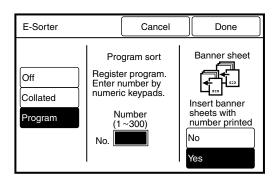*1* Select [Program] as the sorting method.
Enter the program (Program Sort Preset) number using the keypad.

(Note) *The programs are created using the custom presents functions. Refer to the section on "Program Sort Preset" in "5.3 Setting up the Copy Features" for further details.*
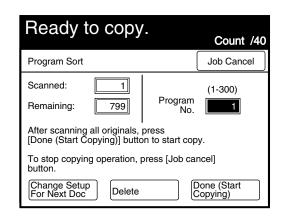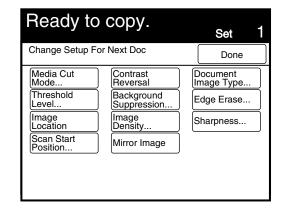
E-Sorter		Cancel	Done
		Program sort	Banner sheet
Off		Register program. Enter number by numeric keypads.	
Collated			Insert banner sheets with number printed
Program		Number (1~300)	No
		No. ▮	Yes

2 Select whether or not to insert a banner sheet ([No] or [Yes]).

3 Enter the number of sets to print using the numeric keypad.

4 Press the [Done] button.
The [E-Sorter] parameters will be set up. The screen will return to the copier's menu.

5 Insert the first document from the set into the scanner.
The [E-Sorter Collated] screen will display.

6 Check the copy. If the copy features are OK, continue at step 10.

7 Press [Delete] if you need to delete the last document scanned.

8 Press [Change Setup] if you need to change any of the copy features of the scanned document
The [Change Setup] screen will display.
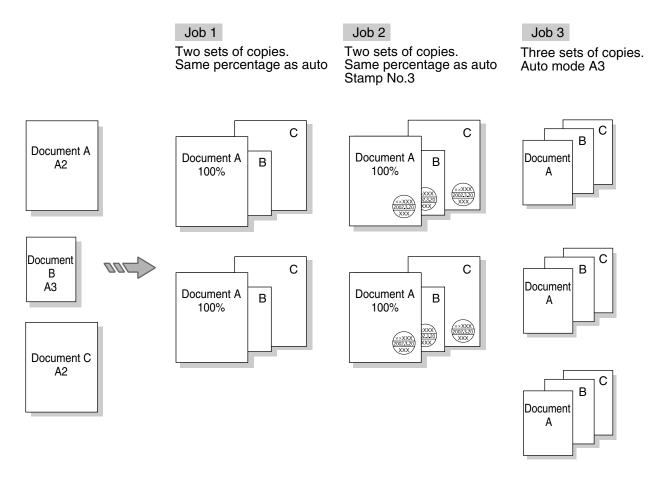
9 Select the desired feature buttons. Select the new settings. Select [Done] to return to the [Change Setup] screen. Select [Done] on the [Change Setup] screen.

10 Insert the next document to be scanned. If needed, select additional features. Repeat step 6 for each document.

11 When the documents are all scanned, select [Done (Start Copying)].

12 Press the <Stop Copy> key or the <Clear all> key to stop the operation.

Ready to copy.
Count /40

Program Sort | Job Cancel

Scanned: | 1 | (1-300)
Remaining: | 799 | Program No. | 1

After scanning all originals, press
[Done (Start Copying)] button to start copy.

To stop copying operation, press [Job cancel] button.

Change Setup For Next Doc | Delete | Done (Start Copying)

Ready to copy.
Set 1

Change Setup For Next Doc | Done

Media Cut Mode... | Contrast Reversal | Document Image Type...
Threshold Level... | Background Suppression... | Edge Erase...
Image Location | Image Density... | Sharpness...
Scan Start Position... | Mirror Image |
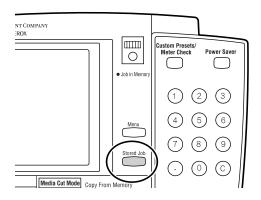
3.17 Sorting Using Multi-Job

The Multi-Job feature enables the user to make and sort copies for multiple stored jobs. The copying mode (Auto/Manual), reduction/enlargement, media supply, finishing (if installed), and the copy quantity can be set up. A maximum of twenty multi-jobs can be stored. Banner sheets also can be inserted between multi-jobs. The group number and time will be printed on the banner sheets.

Job 1
Two sets of copies.
Same percentage as auto

Job 2
Two sets of copies.
Same percentage as auto
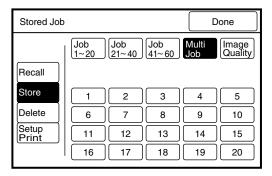Stamp No.3

Job 3
Three sets of copies.
Auto mode A3

Note   *Copies can be set up to print in either ascending order or descending order. Refer to the section "Output Order Preset" in "5.3 Setting up the Copy Features".*
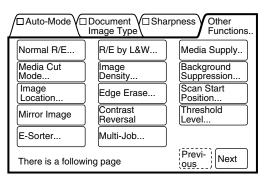
Procedure

1 Set up the multi-job copy settings using the [Stored Job] feature.
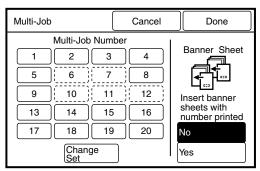
(Refer to) *Refer to "Chapter 4 Stored Jobs".*

2 Select [Multi-Job] from the menu screen's [Other Functions] tab.

The [Multi-Job] screen will display. Previously stored multi-jobs are outlined with a solid line. Unused numbers are outlined with dotted lines.

3 Select the multi-job number(s). Select whether or not to insert a banner sheet.

> (Note) *It is possible to select more than one multi-job number. If no job numbers are selected, the multi-job procedure will be voided.*

Multi-Job	Cancel	Done
Multi-Job Number: 1 2 3 4 / 5 6 7 8 / 9 10 11 12 / 13 14 15 16 / 17 18 19 20 / Change Set
Banner sheet — Insert banner sheets with number printed: No / **Yes**

4 Press the [Change Set] button if the copy quantity needs to be changed.

> (Note) *This function can be used to change the copy quantity that is stored in the stored job. However, note that a change made here will not update in the stored job.*

Multi-Job	Cancel	Done
Multi-Job Number: 1 2 3 4 / 5 6 7 8 / 9 10 11 12 / 13 14 15 16 / 17 18 19 20 / **Change Set**
Banner sheet — Insert banner sheets with number printed: No / **Yes**

5 Select the required number of copies for each multi-job number.
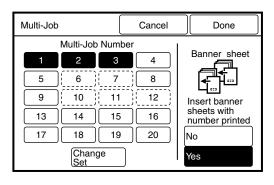
> (Note) *Press the [Next] button to set up multi-job numbers 11 to 20.*
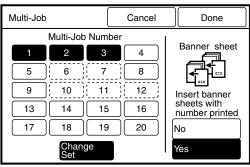
Multi-job Change copies	Cancel	Done
2 2 3 1 1 / 1 2 3 4 5 / – – 1 1 – / 6 7 8 9 10 / **1/2** Previous Next

6 Press the [Done] button.
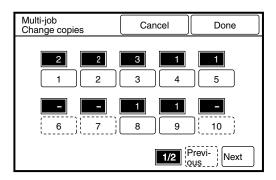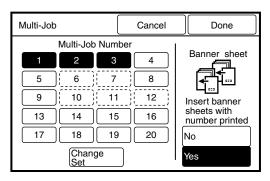
The screen will return to the [Multi-Job] screen.

Multi-Job	Cancel	Done
Multi-Job Number: 1 2 3 4 / 5 6 7 8 / 9 10 11 12 / 13 14 15 16 / 17 18 19 20 / Change Set
Banner sheet — Insert banner sheets with number printed: No / **Yes**

7 Press the [Done] button.
The [Multi-Job] parameters will be set up, and the screen will return to the copier's menu.

8 Insert the first document from the set in the scanner.
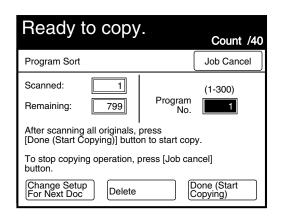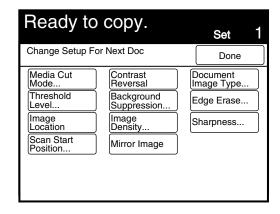The [Program Sort] screen will display.

9 Check the copy. If the copy features are OK, continue at step 13.

10 Press [Delete] if you need to delete the last document scanned.

11 Press [Change Setup] if you need to change any of the copy features of the scanned document
The [Change Setup] screen will display.

12 Select the desired feature buttons. Select the new settings. Select [Done] to return to the [Change Setup] screen. Select [Done] on the [Change Setup] screen.

13 Insert the next document to be scanned. If needed, select additional features. Repeat step 9 for each document.

14 When the documents are all scanned, select [Done (start Copying)].

15 Press the <Stop Copy> key or the <Clear all> key to stop the operation.

Ready to copy.

Count /40

Program Sort | Job Cancel

Scanned: 1
Remaining: 799

Program No. 1

(1-300)

After scanning all originals, press [Done (Start Copying)] button to start copy.

To stop copying operation, press [Job cancel] button.

Change Setup For Next Doc | Delete | Done (Start Copying)

Ready to copy.

Set 1

Change Setup For Next Doc | Done

Media Cut Mode... | Contrast Reversal | Document Image Type...
Threshold Level... | Background Suppression... | Edge Erase...
Image Location | Image Density... | Sharpness...
Scan Start Position... | Mirror Image

Chapter 4

Stored Jobs

4.1 Overview of the Stored Job Feature

The stored job feature enables a user to store copy settings that are frequently used, and then recall them at a later time. Storing complex or frequently used settings as stored jobs simplifies job setups when they need to be run again.

Three types of stored job are available.

Job	The [Job] selection enables the user to set up a stored job using all of the copy settings. A maximum of 60 such job setups can be stored.
Multi-Job	[Multi Job] is the designated job type for storing multi-jobs. The settings that can be stored here include the copying mode (auto/manual), R/E settings, media supply, copy quantity, and finishing, e.g., folding. A maximum of 20 multi-jobs can be stored.
Image Quality	[Image Quality] is the stored job type for saving image quality settings. The settings that can be stored here include the document's image type, background suppression, sharpness, image density, and threshold levels. A maximum of 20 such jobs can be stored.

(Refer to) *Refer to "3.17 Sorting Using Multi-Job" for more details on multi-jobs.*

Preparation

The following preparation is recommended before creating stored jobs.

- Create a table or similar document in which to record stored job information.
  Record the stored job numbers and types, the names of the stored jobs, the names of the document(s) that comprise the stored job(s), etc.
- Copy and use the Stored Job Check Sheet provided on the next page.
  Determine which jobs have not been stored and then check off their set up requirements on the check sheet. This sheet is useful when you need to store complex jobs.
- Store the check sheet and other stored job records and originals in a safe location.

Stored Job Check Sheet

Stored job Number (   )

Copy Sets	< > (1 to 99)			
Media Supply; R/E	☐ Auto-Mode	☐ Manual-Mode		
Auto-Mode	A0->A	A1->A	A2->A	A3->A A4->A
Media Cut Mode	☐ Standard Portrait	☐ Standard Landscape	☐ Synchronized	☐ Variable Length
Variable Length	A0: mm	A1: mm	A2: mm	A3: mm A4: mm
Reduce/Enlarge	☐ Fixed/Variable %			
	☐ R/E by L&W	Ver: %	Hor: %	
Media Supply	☐ Roll 1	☐ Roll 2	☐ Roll 3	☐ Roll 4
	☐ Tray3	☐ Tray4	☐ Manual Feed	

Image Type

Document Image Type	☐ Line	☐ Line/Picture	☐ Picture	☐ Photo
	☐ Dark	☐ Transparent	☐ Diazo	☐ Cut & Past
Image Density			(Light 4 <- Normal -> Dark 4)	
Sharpness			(Minimum 2 <- Normal -> Maximum 2)	
Background Suppression	☐ Auto	☐ Manual	(Auto: Minimum 3 <- Normal -> Maximum 3)	
			(Manual: Minimum 13 <- Normal -> Maximum 25)	
Threshold Level	☐ Off	☐ On	(White 127 <- Normal -> Black 127)	

Edit

Lead Trail Margin	☐ Off	☐ On	Lead: mm Trail: mm
Image Location	☐ Off	☐ On	☐Centering UP /Down: mm Left/Right: mm
Scan Start position	☐ Off	☐ On	UP Down: mm Left Right: mm
Edge Erase	Lead: mm	Trail: mm	Left: mm Right: mm
Mirror Image	☐ Off	☐ On	
Contrast Reversal	☐ Off	☐ On	

E-Sorter

E-Sorter	☐ Off	☐ Collated	☐ Programed < > (1 -> 300)
Banner Sheet	☐ No	☐ Yes	
Output Destination	☐ Top tray	☐ Output bin	

Multi-Job

Multi-Job	☐ Off	☐ On							
Banner Sheet	☐ No	☐ Yes							
Multi-Job Number	☐ 1	☐ 2	☐ 3	☐ 4	☐ 5	☐ 6	☐ 7	☐ 8	☐ 9 ☐ 10
	☐ 11	☐ 12	☐ 13	☐ 14	☐ 15	☐ 16	☐ 17	☐ 18	☐ 19 ☐ 20
Output Destination	☐ Top tray	☐ Output bin							

Others

Low Speed Scanning	☐ Off	☐ On
Paper Exit	☐ Off	☐ On

4.2   Storing a Job

This procedure saves custom copy settings as a stored job.

(Note)   *To change how a stored job will be processed, first delete the existing stored job, and then set it up again.*
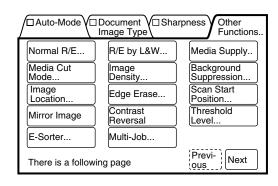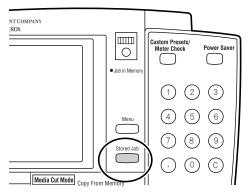
Procedure

1 Using the selections on the menu screen, set up all of the copy features that must be stored.
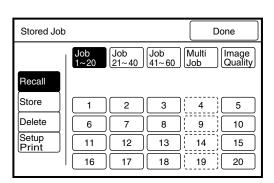
(Note)   *Using the check sheet on the previous page to determine which functions need to be stored.*

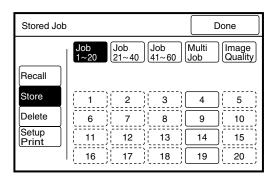*2* Press the [Stored Job] button on the control panel.

The stored job screen will display.

3 Press the [Store] button.

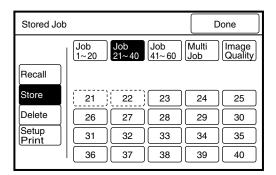| Stored Job					Done
	Job 1~20	Job 21~40	Job 41~60	Multi Job	Image Quality
Recall					
Store	1	2	3	4	5
Delete	6	7	8	9	10
Setup Print	11	12	13	14	15
	16	17	18	19	20

4 Select the job type, that is, [Job], [Multi Job], or [Image Quality], and a job number that is not is use.

(Note) *The buttons outlined in dotted lines already contain stored jobs and cannot be selected.*

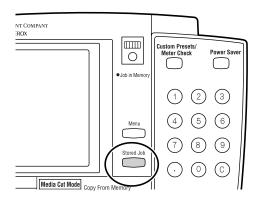| Stored Job					Done
	Job 1~20	Job 21~40	Job 41~60	Multi Job	Image Quality
Recall					
Store	21	22	23	24	25
Delete	26	27	28	29	30
Setup Print	31	32	33	34	35
	36	37	38	39	40

5 Press the [Done] button.

The settings will be saved as the stored job. The copy menu screen will reappear.

4.3   Recalling a Stored Job

This procedure recalls a stored job.
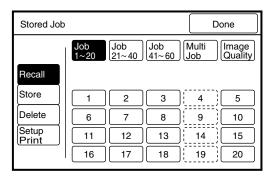
Procedure

1 Press the <Stored Job> key on the control panel.

The stored job screen will display.

2 Press the [Recall] button.

3 Select the job type and job number that are to be recalled.

(Note)   *The buttons outlined in dotted lines do not have stored jobs and cannot be selected.*

4 Insert the document(s) and begin copying.
The copies will be made according to the stored job settings.
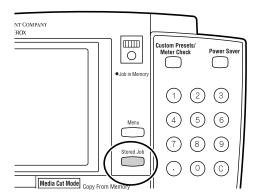
4.4 Deleting a Stored Job
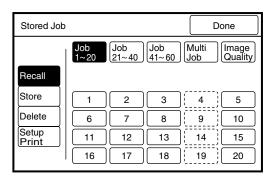
This procedure deletes a stored job.

**Procedure**

1 Press the <Stored Job> key on the control panel.
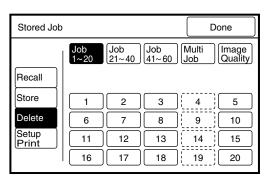
The stored job screen will display.
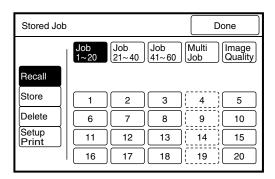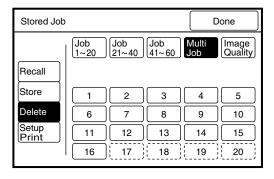
2 Press the [Delete] button.
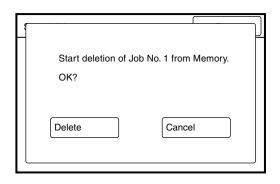
3 Select the job type and the job number that are to be deleted.

(Note) *The buttons that are outlined with dotted lines do not contain stored jobs and cannot be selected.*

4 Press the [Delete] button when the confirmation screen displays.

The stored job will be deleted.

5 Press the [Done] button.

The copy menu screen will reappear.

Start deletion of Job No. 1 from Memory.
OK?

Delete   Cancel

4.5 Printing the Stored Job Settings
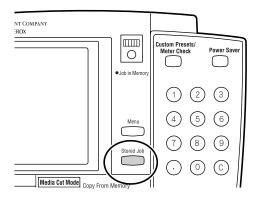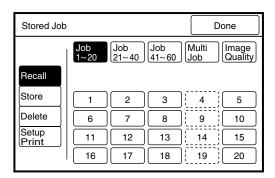
This procedure prints a list of the stored job(s) settings.

Procedure

1 Press the <Stored Job> key on the control panel.
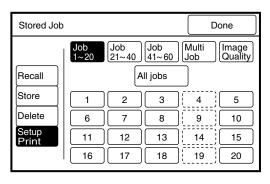
The stored job screen will display.
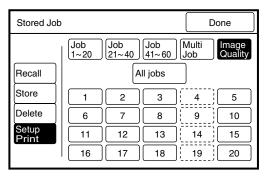
2 Press the [Setup Print] button.

3 Select the job type and the job number that are to be printed. Press the [All Jobs] button if all stored job settings are to be printed.

(Note)   *The buttons that are outlined with dotted lines do not contain stored jobs and cannot be selected.*
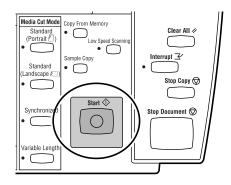
4 Press the <Start> key on the control panel.

The stored job settings will print.

5 Press the [Done] button.

The copy menu screen will reappear.

Media Cut Mode

Standard
(Portrait)

Standard
(Landscape)

Synchronized

Variable Length

Copy From Memory

Low Speed Scanning

Sample Copy

Start

Clear All

Interrupt

Stop Copy

Stop Document

Chapter 5

Custom Presets/Meter Check

5.1 Custom Presets

Most system administration functions are performed through the Custom Presets feature. Changing the custom presets overrides the factory (default) settings that were in effect when the machine was installed. Users typically change the custom presets to customize the machine for their unique operating needs.
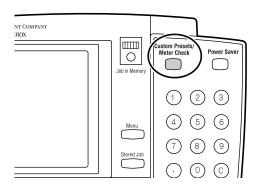
There are two subsets of features within the custom presets - the System Presets and the Copy Features. The System Presets affect general machine behavior. The Copy Features determine how the machine performs copying tasks, such as image processing and image editing.

In addition to providing access to the Custom Presets, pressing the <Custom Presets/ Meter Check> key enables the user to do the following.

- View the billing meter readings.

- View the machine software version and system configuration information.

- Define the default sizes, types, and weights of media that will be used in the machine.

- Set up the document size series for automatic size detection purposes.

Procedure
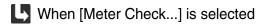
1 Press the <Custom Presets/Meter Check> key.

The [Custom Presets/Meter Check] screen will display.

2 Select the button for the parameter that needs to be set up, or the item that needs to be checked.

↳ When [Meter Check...] is selected

Displays the billing meters.

(Refer to) *Refer to "5.4 Meter Check" for more details.*

Meter Check		Done
	Current Count	
Meter 1	0	
Meter 2	0	
Meter 3	0	
Machine Number : 1234567890		
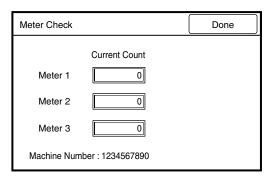
↳ When [Media Setting/ Trimming...] is selected

Allows the user to set up the size, type, and weight of roll and cut sheet media.
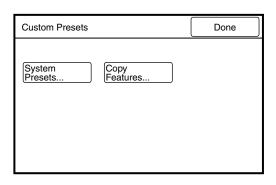
(Refer to) *Refer to "1.15 Setting Up Media" for further details.*

Media setting/Trimming			Done
	Size series	Media type	Weight
Roll 1	ISO A	Bond	Light
Roll 2	ISO A	Bond	Light
Tray 3	ISO A	Bond	Light
Tray 4	ISO A	Vellum	Light
Manual feed	ISO A	Bond	Light

↳ When [Custom Presets] is selected

Allows the user to change the custom presets. There are two types of custom presets - System Presets and Copy Features.

Custom Presets	Done
System Presets... / Copy Features...	
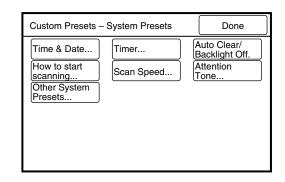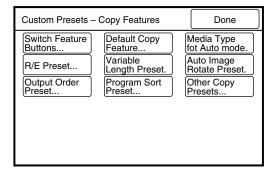
[System Presets] sets up the operating parameters for the machine, such as the system clock and the power saver mode settings.

(Refer to) *Refer to "5.2 Setting up the System Presets" for further details.*

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Custom Presets – System Presets      ┌─────────┐ │
│                                      │  Done   │ │
│                                      └─────────┘ │
│ ┌────────────┐ ┌────────────┐ ┌────────────────┐ │
│ │Time & Date.│ │Timer...    │ │Auto Clear/     │ │
│ └────────────┘ └────────────┘ │Backlight Off.  │ │
│ ┌────────────┐ ┌────────────┐ └────────────────┘ │
│ │How to start│ │Scan Speed..│ ┌────────────────┐ │
│ │scanning... │ └────────────┘ │Attention       │ │
│ └────────────┘                │Tone...         │ │
│ ┌────────────┐                └────────────────┘ │
│ │Other System│                                   │
│ │Presets...  │                                   │
│ └────────────┘                                   │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

[Copy Features] sets up the copying parameters, such as the copier's default values for copying and the media types to use in the auto mode.

(Refer to) *Refer to "5.3 Setting up the Copy Features" for further details.*

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Custom Presets – Copy Features       ┌─────────┐ │
│                                      │  Done   │ │
│                                      └─────────┘ │
│ ┌────────────┐ ┌────────────┐ ┌────────────────┐ │
│ │Switch Featu│ │Default Copy│ │Media Type      │ │
│ │Buttons...  │ │Feature...  │ │fot Auto mode.  │ │
│ └────────────┘ └────────────┘ └────────────────┘ │
│ ┌────────────┐ ┌────────────┐ ┌────────────────┐ │
│ │R/E Preset..│ │Variable    │ │Auto Image      │ │
│ └────────────┘ │Length Pres.│ │Rotate Preset.  │ │
│ ┌────────────┐ └────────────┘ └────────────────┘ │
│ │Output Order│ ┌────────────┐ ┌────────────────┐ │
│ │Preset...   │ │Program Sort│ │Other Copy      │ │
│ └────────────┘ │Preset...   │ │Presets...      │ │
│                └────────────┘ └────────────────┘ │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

When [Software Version] is selected

Displays the versions of the software which are installed on the machine.

Software Version		Done
Items	Setting	
1. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
2. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
3. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
4. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
5. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
6. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
7. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
8. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
9. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
10. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	

▲ ▼ n/n Previ-ous Next

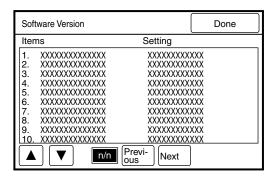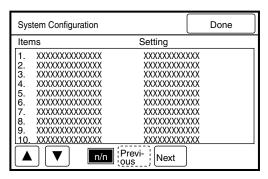**When [System Configuration] is selected**

Displays the configuration of the machine, e.g., the installed memory and the installed options.

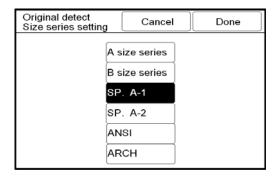| System Configuration		Done
Items	Setting	
1. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
2. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
3. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
4. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
5. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
6. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
7. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
8. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
9. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
10. XXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	

▲ ▼ n/n Previ-ous Next

When [Document size series] is selected

Displays the size series selections for document size detection.

(Refer to) *Refer to "5.5 Document Size Series" for further details.*

Original detect Size series setting	Cancel	Done

A size series

B size series

SP. A-1

SP. A-2

ANSI

ARCH

5.2 Setting up the System Presets
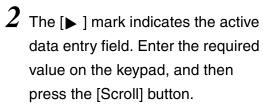
The items listed in the table below can be accessed from the copier control panel by pressing the <Custom Presets/Meter Check> key, selecting [Custom Presets], and then selecting [System Presets].

| System Presets	
Time & Date	Sets up the system clock and calendar.
Timer	Sets up the amount of time that must elapse before the machine enters each of the three power saver modes.
Auto Clear/Backlight Off	Auto Clear automatically resets the copy settings of the most recent copy job to the current machine default settings. Backlight Off enables or disables the copier control panel backlight. If either of these settings is enabled, the user can specify the amount of time that must elapse from the end of the previous job until they take effect.
How to Start Scanning	This selection determines how to initiate document scanning, that is, [Auto Start] (scanning starts when the lead edge of the document is detected by the scanner), or [Manual Start] (when the user presses the <Start> key).
Scan Speed	Enables or disables the slow scanning speed function. Slow speed scanning helps protect delicate originals from damage.
Attention Tone	Turns On and Off the tones that sound when the keys on the control panel are pressed, and when the warm up period ends.
Other System Presets	Sets up all other system presets.

Time & Date

This selection sets up the system date and time.
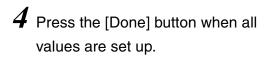
Procedure

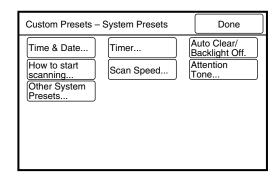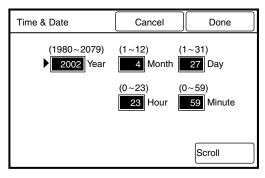*1* Select [Time & Date...] on the [Custom Presets – System Presets] screen.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Custom Presets – System Presets   [  Done  ] │
│                                              │
│  ┌────────────┐ ┌──────────┐ ┌─────────────┐ │
│  │Time & Date.│ │Timer...  │ │Auto Clear/  │ │
│  └────────────┘ └──────────┘ │Backlight Off│ │
│  ┌────────────┐ ┌──────────┐ └─────────────┘ │
│  │How to start│ │Scan Speed│ ┌─────────────┐ │
│  │scanning... │ └──────────┘ │Attention    │ │
│  └────────────┘              │Tone...      │ │
│  ┌────────────┐              └─────────────┘ │
│  │Other System│                              │
│  │Presets...  │                              │
│  └────────────┘                              │
│                                              │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

2 The [▶] mark indicates the active data entry field. Enter the required value on the keypad, and then press the [Scroll] button.
The [▶] mark will move to the next field.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Time & Date        [  Cancel  ] [  Done  ]   │
│                                              │
│  (1980~2079)    (1~12)      (1~31)           │
│ ▶[2002] Year   [ 4] Month  [27] Day          │
│                                              │
│                 (0~23)      (0~59)           │
│                [23] Hour   [59] Minute        │
│                                              │
│                             ┌────────┐       │
│                             │ Scroll │       │
│                             └────────┘       │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```
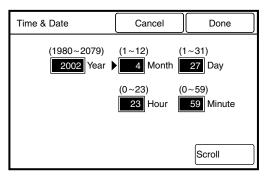
3 Enter the next value on the keypad, and then press the [Scroll] button.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Time & Date        [  Cancel  ] [  Done  ]   │
│                                              │
│  (1980~2079)    (1~12)      (1~31)           │
│ [2002] Year  ▶[ 4] Month  [27] Day           │
│                                              │
│                 (0~23)      (0~59)           │
│                [23] Hour   [59] Minute        │
│                                              │
│                             ┌────────┐       │
│                             │ Scroll │       │
│                             └────────┘       │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

4 Press the [Done] button when all values are set up.
The specified values will be saved and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets – System Presets] screen.

Timer

These settings determine when the machine will enter each of the power save modes. The power save feature reduces the machine's power consumption between copy and print jobs.
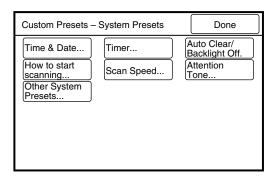
Power save Low Power Mode 1	Reduces the temperature of the fuser. The amount of time that must elapse since the previous job was completed can be set from 1 to 120 minutes. The default setting is 5 minutes.
Power save Low Power Mode 2	Reduces the temperature of the fuser further. The amount of time that must elapse since the previous job was completed can be from 5 to 120 minutes. The default setting is 15 minutes.
Power save Sleep Mode	Automatically switches off the printer power. The amount of time that must elapse since the previous job was completed can be from 15 to 120 minutes. The default setting is 90 minutes.

The Low Power and Sleep Modes will be canceled when any of the following occur:
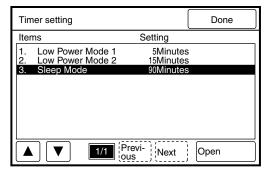
• The <Power Saver> key on the copier control panel is pressed.

• A print job is received.

• The <Power Saver> key on the printer control panel is pressed.

Procedure

1 Select [Timer...] on the [Custom Presets – System Presets] screen.

2 Select the required mode with the [▲] and [▼] buttons, and then press the [Open] button.
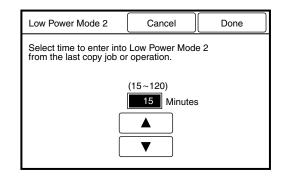
3 Select the time with the [▲] and
[▼] buttons, and then press the
[Done] button.

The selection will display on the timer
setting screen.

4 Press the [Done] button again.

The selected values will be saved and
the [Custom Presets – System Presets]
screen will reappear.

Low Power Mode 2	Cancel	Done

Select time to enter into Low Power Mode 2
from the last copy job or operation.

(15~120)

15 Minutes

▲

▼

Auto Clear/Backlight Off

Specifies whether or not to automatically reset the system to the copy defaults, and switch off the touch panel's backlight. The default value when shipped from the factory is [No].
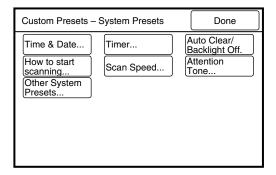
Auto Clear	This function has the same effect as pressing the <Clear All> key at the end of a copy job. The system will clear all current copy settings and revert to the default settings after a preset period elapses with no selections being made on the control panel.
Backlight Off	Determines whether the backlight will be switched off after a preset period elapses with no selections made on the control panel.
Select time from the end of copy/last job	Sets the time-out interval that must elapse before the machine reverts to the default copy settings or switches off the backlight. The setting may range from 30 to 180 seconds, in increments of 30 seconds.

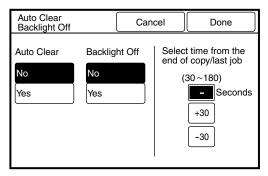These modes can be cancelled by performing the following.
- Pressing any button on the control panel.
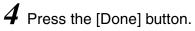- Touching the touch panel display (setup screen)

Procedure

1 Select [Auto Clear/Backlight Off] on the [Custom Presets – System Presets] screen.

2 Select [Yes] or [No] to specify whether or not to automatically reset the system and switch off the backlight.

3 If [Yes] is selected, set the time-out interval using the [+30] and [–30] buttons.

4 Press the [Done] button.

The selected values will be saved and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets – System Presets] screen.
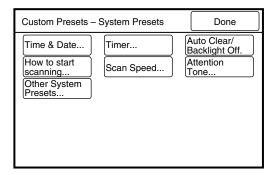
How to Start Scanning

Determines whether scanning will start automatically or by pressing the <Start> key. The default value when shipped from the factory is [Auto Start].
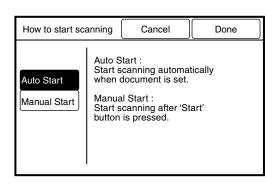
Auto Start	Automatically starts scanning when the lead edge of the document is detected by the scanner.
Manual Start	Starts scanning when the <Start> key is pressed.

Procedure

1 Select [How to Start Scanning] on the [Custom Presets – System Presets] screen.

```
Custom Presets – System Presets        Done

 Time & Date...    Timer...       Auto Clear/
                                  Backlight Off.
 How to start                     Attention
 scanning...       Scan Speed...  Tone...
 Other System
 Presets...
```

2 Select either [Auto Start] or [Manual Start] as the method to start scanning.

```
How to start scanning   Cancel    Done

                 Auto Start :
                 Start scanning automatically
 Auto Start      when document is set.

 Manual Start    Manual Start :
                 Start scanning after 'Start'
                 button is pressed.
```

3 Press the [Done] button.
The specified values will be saved and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets – System Presets] screen.
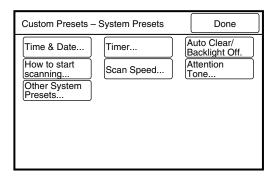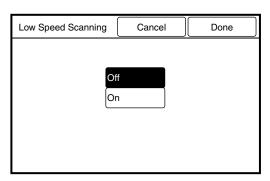
Scan Speed

This setting determines whether or not the low document scanning speed will be enabled when the <Low Speed Scanning> key on the control panel is pressed. The scanning speed is reduced by fifty percent if this parameter is set to [On]. The default value when shipped from the factory is [Off].

Procedure

1 Select [Scan Speed...] on the [Custom Presets – System Presets] screen.

Custom Presets – System Presets		Done
Time & Date...	Timer...	Auto Clear/ Backlight Off.
How to start scanning...	Scan Speed...	Attention Tone...
Other System Presets...		

2 Select [On] to enable low speed scanning. Select [Off] to disable low speed scanning.

Low Speed Scanning	Cancel	Done

Off

On

3 Press the [Done] button.
The specified values will be saved and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets – System Presets] screen.

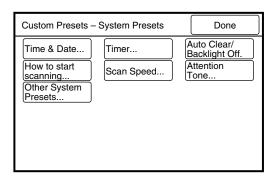# Attention Tone

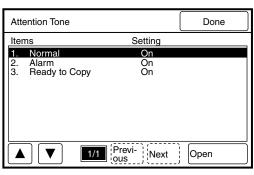This feature sets up the attention tones. The default value when shipped from the factory is [On] for all tones.

Normal	This setting determines whether or not to sound a tone when the buttons on the control panel are accepted by the system.
Alarm	This setting determines whether or not to sound a tone when the buttons on the control panel are not accepted by the system.
Ready to Copy	This setting determines whether or not to sound a tone when the warm up period ends.

Procedure

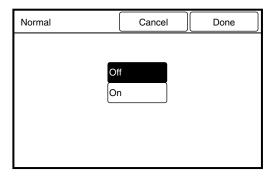*1* Select [Attention Tone...] on the [Custom Presets – System Presets] screen.

```
Custom Presets – System Presets          Done

Time & Date...    Timer...        Auto Clear/
                                  Backlight Off.
How to start                      Attention
scanning...       Scan Speed...   Tone...
Other System
Presets...
```

2 Select the required item with the use of the [▲] and [▼] buttons, and then press the [Open] button.

```
Attention Tone                           Done

Items                     Setting
1.  Normal                On
2.  Alarm                 On
3.  Ready to Copy         On




  ▲     ▼     1/1  Previ-  Next   Open
                   ous
```

3 Select [On] to enable the selected feature; select [Off] to disable the feature. Press the [Done] button.
The selection will display on the [Attention Tone] setup screen.

```
Normal            Cancel      Done



         Off

         On

```

4 Press the [Done] button.
The selected values will be saved and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets – System Presets] screen.
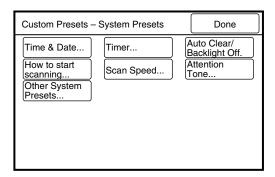
Other System Presets

To access the Other System Presets, select the [Other System Presets] button on the [Custom Presets - System Presets] screen. These selections can be used to set up all of the remaining system presets (see the table below).

| Code Number	Other System Preset (description)	Change	Default
0	Determines whether or not to switch from the tray to the roll automatically. (N/A for 6030/6050)	No: 0 Yes: 1	No: 0
1	Determines whether or not to switch from the roll to the tray automatically.	No: 0 Yes: 1	No: 0
2	Sets up the priority sequence for roll 1.	0 to 4	1
3	Sets up the priority sequence for roll 2.	0 to 4	2
4	Sets up the priority sequence for roll 3.	0 to 4	3
5	Sets up the priority sequence for roll 4.	0 to 4	4
6	Reserved	-	-
7	Reserved	-	-
8	Sets up the priority sequence for manual feeding.	0 to 6	0
9	Sets up the minimum length of the guaranteed cut when synchronized cutting is selected.	0 to 15 m (Subsequent documents will not be scanned until the previous copy has printed when this parameter is set to [0] or to a value that exceeds the capacity of the memory.)	7 m
10	Determines whether copies will print while scanning is being performed when synchronized cutting has been selected.	No: 0 (copies will print while the document is being scanned.) Yes: 1 (copies will print after scanning is completed.)	Yes: 1
11	Sets up the roll or tray to be used when printing stamp lists and the contents of the job memory.	Roll 1: 0 Roll 2: 1 Roll 3: 2 Roll 4: 3	Roll 1: 0
12	Sets up the media cut mode to be used when printing stamp lists and the contents of the job memory.	Standard Portrait: 0 Standard Landscape: 1 Variable Length: 2 Synchronized: 3	Standard Portrait: 0
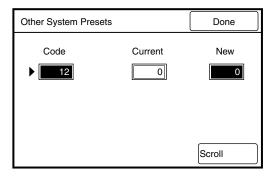
| Code Number	Other System Preset (description)	Change	Default
13	Enables or disables the sleep mode.	Not Disable: 0 Disable: 1	Not Disable: 0
14	Sets up the amount of time that the image data from the previous job will be stored in memory, thereby enabling the [Copy From Memory] feature. Once the time set here elapses, the stored image data will be erased.	Time (seconds)	60 seconds
15	Sets up the time period during which an interruption job must begin after the <Interrupt> key is pressed. Once the time set here elapses, the interruption mode is cancelled.	Time (seconds)	60 seconds
16	Determines if the document scanning width will be fixed at 36".	No: 0 (Scan at the standard sizes detected by the document size sensor.) Yes: 1 (Scan at a fixed size of 36".)	No: 0
17	Determines if the auto mode function will link with document size series setting.	Link with document size series: 1 Do not link with document size series: 0	Not linked: 0
18	Sets up the density of the gray stamp.	Light: 0, Normal: 1, Dark: 2, Darker: 3, Darkest: 4	Normal: 1

Procedure
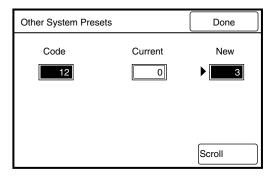
1 Select [Other System Presets] on the [Custom Presets – System Presets] screen.

```
Custom Presets – System Presets        Done

Time & Date...      Timer...          Auto Clear/
                                      Backlight Off.
How to start                          Attention
scanning...         Scan Speed...     Tone...
Other System
Presets...
```

2 Enter the Code Number from the Other System Presets table using the numeric keypad, and then press the [Scroll] button.
The [▶] mark will move to the next field.

```
Other System Presets                   Done

     Code          Current         New

 ▶    12              0              0

                                         Scroll
```

3 Referring to the Change column in the table above, enter the desired value in the [New] field using the numeric keypad, and then press the [Scroll] button.

```
Other System Presets                   Done

     Code          Current         New

      12              0         ▶    3

                                         Scroll
```

4 Press the [Done] button.
The specified values will be saved and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets – System Presets] screen.

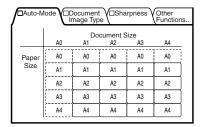# *5.3* Setting up the Copy Features

The copy features (copying parameters) are defined in the table below. To set up the copy features, press the <Custom Presets/Meter Check> key, select [Custom Presets], and then select [Copy Features].
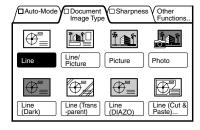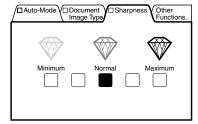
.

| Copy Features	
Switch Feature Buttons	Lays out the menus and features on the touch panel.
Default Copy Features	Sets up the copying settings that the system returns to when the <Clear All> key is pressed.
Media Type for Auto Mode	Specifies the default media type when copying in the auto mode.
R/E Preset	Defines the preset reduction and enlargement settings.
Variable Length Preset	Sets up the default values for the variable lengths specified for each media size.
Auto Image Rotation	When media that matches the portrait dimension of an original is not available, this function will rotate the image 90 degrees (from portrait to landscape) and print it on media that matches the image's landscape dimension. This feature requires that the width of at least one media roll is the same as either the length or the width of the original. **Important** *This setting is valid only when [Portrait] is selected in Auto Mode.* *Auto Image Rotation becomes invalid when any of the following are set up for a job.* • Folder • Lead/Trail Margin, Image Location, Scan Start Position, Edge Erase • Multi Job
Output Order Preset	Determines whether copies will be printed in ascending order (first to last) or descending order (last to first) when sorting is selected.
Program Sort Preset	Sets up the sorting programs.
Setting Up the Other Copy Presets	Sets up other copy presets.

Switch Feature Buttons
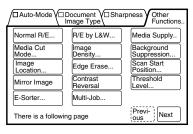
This feature enables the user to customize the layout of the copy setup screens by placing the items that are used the most often on the top screen.
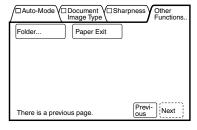

Tab1

Tab2

Tab3

Tab4 P1
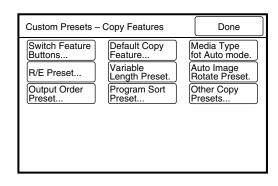

Tab4 P2

Procedure

1 Select [Switch Feature Buttons] on the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.
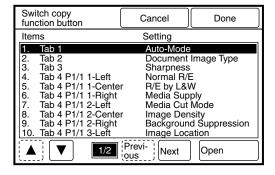The [Switch copy function button] screen will display.

2 Select the item (tab or menu) that is to be placed on a tab in the copier's menu screen, and then press the [Open] button.

(Note) *Press the [Next] button if the required menu is not displayed on the screen.*
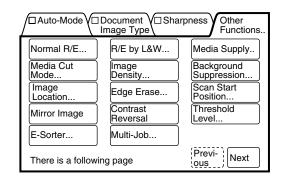
3 Select the tab or the menu that is to be replaced by the tab or menu selected in step *2*.

The menu will be placed in this location.

Auto-Mode	Document Image Type	Sharpness	Other Functions..
Normal R/E...	R/E by L&W...	Media Supply..	
Media Cut Mode...	Image Density...	Background Suppression...	
Image Location...	Edge Erase...	Scan Start Position...	
Mirror Image	Contrast Reversal	Threshold Level...	
E-Sorter...	Multi-Job...		
There is a following page		Previ-ous	Next

4 Press the [Done] button when all values have been set.

The specified values will be saved and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.

Default Copy Features

The Default Copy Features are defined in the table below. The system returns to these settings when the machine power is switched on, when the <Clear All> key is pressed, and when the automatic reset function ([Auto Clear]) activates. Defining the most frequently used settings as the defaults reduces the need to reset the parameters every time a copy is made.

No.	Copy Function	Available Values	Default when shipped form the factory
1	Default Mode	Auto Mode, Manual Mode	Auto Mode
2	Auto Mode	Used to map document sizes to media sizes.	-
3	Reduce/Enlarge Presets	25 to 400%	200.0%, 141.1%, 70.7%, 50.0%, 35.3%, 25.0%
4	Media Supply Default	Roll 1, Roll 2, Roll 3, Roll 4, Manual Feed	Roll 1
5	Media Cut Mode Default	Standard Portrait, Standard Landscape, Synchronized, Variable Length	Standard Portrait
6	Lead/Trail Margin	Lead margin: 0 to 999 mm/0 to 39.0 inches Trail margin: 0 to 999 mm/0 to 39.0 inches	Lead margin 0 mm/in. Trail margin 0 mm/in.
7	Image Density	Darker, Normal, Lighter (9 steps)	Normal
8	Background Suppression	Auto Adjustment (7 steps), Manual Adjustment (39 steps)	Automatic (standard)
9	Document Image Type	Line, Line/Picture, Picture, Photo, Line (Dark), Line (Transparent), Line (DIAZO), Line (Cut & Paste)	Line
10	Sharpness	Minimum to Normal to Maximum (5 steps)	Normal
11	Image Location	Up/Down ± 999 mm/39.0 inches Left/Right ± 500 mm/19.0 inches	Up/Down 0 mm/in. Left/Right 0 mm/in.
12	Edge Erase	Lead Edge Erase: 0 to 50 mm/0 to 2.0 inches Trail Edge Erase: 0 to 50 mm/0 to 2.0 inches Left Erase: 0 to 50 mm/0 to 2.0 inches Right Erase: 0 to 50 mm/0 to 2.0 inches	Lead Edge 0 mm/in. Trail Edge 0 mm/in. Left 0 mm/in. Right 0 mm/in.
13	Scan Start Position	Top/Bottom ± 999 mm/39.0 inches Left/Right ± 500 mm/19.0 inches	Up/Down 0 mm/in. Left/Right 0 mm/in.
14	Threshold Level	On, Off	Off
15	Banner Sheet	On, Off	Off
16	Sample Copy	Start Position: 0 to 1.2 m/0 to 47.0 inches Measurement: 50 to 200 mm/2.0 to 7.5 inches	Start Position 0 mm/in. Measurement 50 mm/2.0 inches

Procedure

1 Select [Default Copy Feature...] on the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.

```
Custom Presets – Copy Features        Done

Switch Feature   Default Copy     Media Type
Buttons...       Feature...       fot Auto mode.

R/E Preset...    Variable         Auto Image
                 Length Preset.   Rotate Preset.

Output Order     Program Sort     Other Copy
Preset...        Preset...        Presets...
```

2 Select the item to be set up using the [▲] and [▼] buttons, and then press the [Open] button.
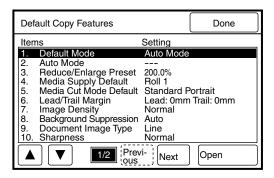
(Note)   *Press the [Next] button if the required menu is not displayed on the screen.*

```
Default Copy Features                  Done

Items                       Setting
1.  Default Mode            Auto Mode
2.  Auto Mode               - - -
3.  Reduce/Enlarge Preset   200.0%
4.  Media Supply Default    Roll 1
5.  Media Cut Mode Default  Standard Portrait
6.  Lead/Trail Margin       Lead: 0mm Trail: 0mm
7.  Image Density           Normal
8.  Background Suppression  Auto
9.  Document Image Type     Line
10. Sharpness               Normal

  ▲      ▼     1/2  Previ-  Next    Open
                    ous
```
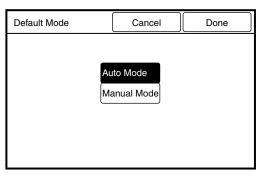
3 Change the default setting as required, and then press the [Done] button.

The entered value will be displayed on the default copy features screen.

```
Default Mode           Cancel        Done



           Auto Mode

           Manual Mode

```

4 Press the [Done] button when all values have been set up.

The specified values will be saved and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.
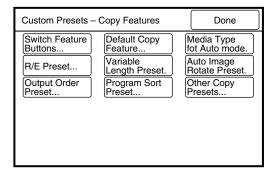
Media Type for Auto Mode

Sets up the media type for each media size for auto mode copying. The selections include [Not Selected], [Bond], [Film], and [Vellum].
A [No Paper] error will be triggered if the media specified here is not loaded in the machine.
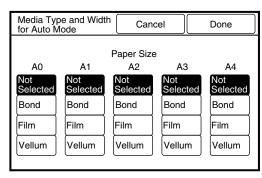
(Refer to) *Refer to "3.2 Making Copies in the Auto Mode" for details on the auto mode.*

Procedure

1 Select [Media Type for Auto mode] on the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.

Custom Presets – Copy Features		Done
Switch Feature Buttons...	Default Copy Feature...	Media Type fot Auto mode.
R/E Preset...	Variable Length Preset.	Auto Image Rotate Preset.
Output Order Preset...	Program Sort Preset...	Other Copy Presets...

2 Select the media type for each media size.

Media Type and Width for Auto Mode | Cancel | Done

Paper Size

A0	A1	A2	A3	A4
Not Selected	Not Selected	Not Selected	Not Selected	Not Selected
Bond	Bond	Bond	Bond	Bond
Film	Film	Film	Film	Film
Vellum	Vellum	Vellum	Vellum	Vellum

3 Press the [Done] button.
The specified values will be saved and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.
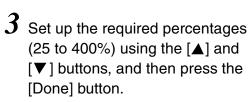
R/E Preset

Sets up the reduction and enlargement presets that are displayed on the setup screen when [R/E Presets] is selected.

Procedure

1 Select [R/E Preset...] on the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.

The [Reduce/Enlarge Presets] screen displays.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Custom Presets – Copy Features    │  Done  │ │
│                                              │
│ ┌──────────┐ ┌──────────┐ ┌──────────┐      │
│ │Switch    │ │Default   │ │Media Type│      │
│ │Feature   │ │Copy      │ │fot Auto  │      │
│ │Buttons...│ │Feature...│ │mode.     │      │
│ ├──────────┤ ├──────────┤ ├──────────┤      │
│ │R/E       │ │Variable  │ │Auto Image│      │
│ │Preset... │ │Length    │ │Rotate    │      │
│ │          │ │Preset.   │ │Preset.   │      │
│ ├──────────┤ ├──────────┤ ├──────────┤      │
│ │Output    │ │Program   │ │Other Copy│      │
│ │Order     │ │Sort      │ │Presets...│      │
│ │Preset... │ │Preset... │ │          │      │
│ └──────────┘ └──────────┘ └──────────┘      │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

2 Select the item to be set up using the [▲] and [▼] buttons, and then press the [Open] button.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Reduce/Enlarge Presets           │  Done  │ │
│                                              │
│ Items                    Setting             │
│ 1.   Preset 1             70.7%              │
│ 2.   Preset 2            141.1%              │
│ 3.   Preset 3            200.0%              │
│ 4.   Preset 4             50.0%              │
│ 5.   Preset 5             35.3%              │
│ 6.   Preset 6             25.0%              │
│                                              │
│ ┌──┐ ┌──┐      ┌───┐ Previ- ┌────┐ ┌────┐   │
│ │▲ │ │▼ │      │1/1│ ous    │Next│ │Open│   │
│ └──┘ └──┘      └───┘        └────┘ └────┘   │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```
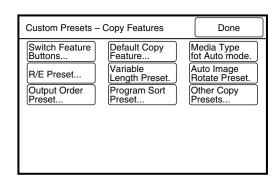
3 Set up the required percentages (25 to 400%) using the [▲] and [▼] buttons, and then press the [Done] button.
The entered value will be displayed on the [Reduce/Enlarge Presets] screen.
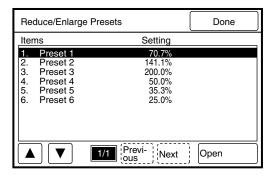
(Note) *Press the [+0.1] and [–0.1] buttons to increase or decrease the value in increments of 0.1.*
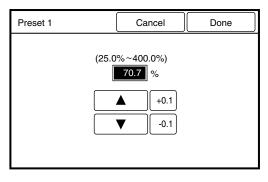
```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Preset 1        │ Cancel │     │  Done  │   │
│                                              │
│          (25.0%~400.0%)                      │
│          ┌──────┐                            │
│          │ 70.7 │ %                          │
│          └──────┘                            │
│          ┌──────┐  ┌──────┐                  │
│          │  ▲   │  │ +0.1 │                  │
│          └──────┘  └──────┘                  │
│          ┌──────┐  ┌──────┐                  │
│          │  ▼   │  │ -0.1 │                  │
│          └──────┘  └──────┘                  │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

4 Press the [Done] button when all values have been set.
The specified values will be saved and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.
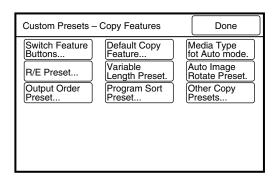
Variable Length Preset

Sets up the default values for the [Variable Length] displayed on the setup screen when the media cut mode is specified. The paper sizes can be set up within a range of 210 to 15,000 mm for each media size.
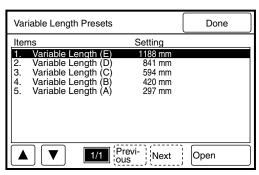
Important *The maximum length that can be printed will differ based on the width of the selected media and whether or not the optional Print Length Extension Memory (512 MB) is installed.*

Procedure

1 Select [Variable Length Preset] on the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.

Custom Presets – Copy Features		Done
Switch Feature Buttons...	Default Copy Feature...	Media Type fot Auto mode.
R/E Preset...	Variable Length Preset.	Auto Image Rotate Preset.
Output Order Preset...	Program Sort Preset...	Other Copy Presets...
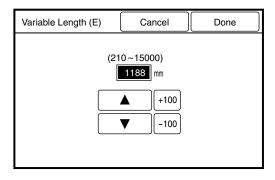
2 Select the item to be set up with the use of the [▲] and [▼] buttons, and then press the [Open] button.

Variable Length Presets — Done

Items	Setting
1. Variable Length (E)	1188 mm
2. Variable Length (D)	841 mm
3. Variable Length (C)	594 mm
4. Variable Length (B)	420 mm
5. Variable Length (A)	297 mm

[▲] [▼] 1/1 Previous Next Open

3 Set the required length with the use of the [▲] and [▼] buttons, and then press the [Done] button. The entered value will be reflected back on the Variable Length Preset screen.

Variable Length (E) — Cancel — Done

(210~15000)
1188 mm

[▲] +100
[▼] −100

Note *Press the [+100] and [−100] buttons to increase or decrease the value in increments of 100.*

4 Press the [Done] button. The specified values will be saved and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.

Auto Image Rotation

Rotates an image 90 degrees to print on landscape media when the corresponding size portrait media is unavailable.
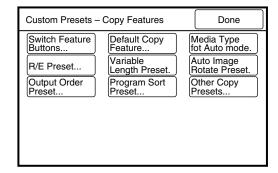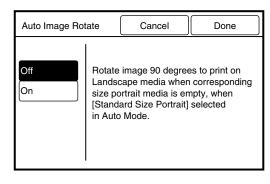
Important *This setting is valid only when [Portrait] is selected in [Auto Mode].*
Auto Image Rotation becomes invalid when any of the following are set up.
- Folder
- Lead/Trail Margin, Image Location, Scan Start Position, Edge Erase
- Multi Job

Procedure

1 Select [Auto Image Rotate Preset] from the [Custom Presets-Copy Features] Screen.

Custom Presets – Copy Features		Done
Switch Feature Buttons...	Default Copy Feature...	Media Type fot Auto mode.
R/E Preset...	Variable Length Preset.	Auto Image Rotate Preset.
Output Order Preset...	Program Sort Preset...	Other Copy Presets...

2 Select [On] or [Off] for the [Auto Image Rotate].

3 Press the [Done] button.
The setting is saved, and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets-Copy Features] screen.

Auto Image Rotate	Cancel	Done
Off	Rotate image 90 degrees to print on Landscape media when corresponding size portrait media is empty, when [Standard Size Portrait] selected in Auto Mode.	
On		

Output Order Preset
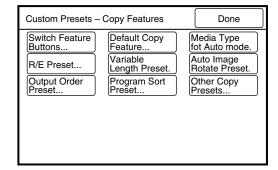
Determines the order in which copies will be printed when sorting or multi-job copying is selected.

The copies will be output in first-to-last order when [Ascending Order] is specified.

The copies will be output in last-to-first order when [Descending Order] is specified.
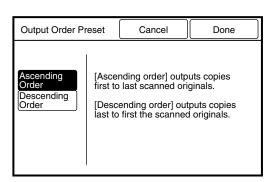
(Refer to) *Refer to "3.16 Sorting Using E-Sorter" for details on the sorting function, and "3.17 Sorting Using Multi-Job" for details on the multi-job function.*

Procedure

1 Select [Output Order Preset] on the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.

Custom Presets – Copy Features		Done
Switch Feature Buttons...	Default Copy Feature...	Media Type fot Auto mode.
R/E Preset...	Variable Length Preset.	Auto Image Rotate Preset.
Output Order Preset...	Program Sort Preset...	Other Copy Presets...

2 Select the output order from either [Ascending Order] or [Descending Order].

Output Order Preset	Cancel	Done

Ascending Order
Descending Order

[Ascending order] outputs copies first to last scanned originals.

[Descending order] outputs copies last to first the scanned originals.

3 Press the [Done] button.

The specified values will be saved and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.
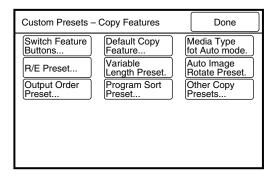
Program Sort Preset

This feature defines the number of copies that will be printed for each distribution destination when Program E-Sort is selected. A maximum of 40 groups containing 300 programs can be saved.

(Refer to) *Refer to "3.16 Sorting Using E-Sorter" for further details on the program sort presets.*

Procedure

1 Select [Program Sort Preset] on the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.

```
Custom Presets – Copy Features        Done

Switch Feature    Default Copy      Media Type
Buttons...        Feature...        fot Auto mode.

R/E Preset...     Variable          Auto Image
                  Length Preset.    Rotate Preset.

Output Order      Program Sort      Other Copy
Preset...         Preset...         Presets...
```
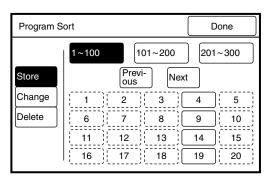
2 Select the program number to be saved.
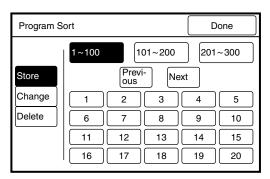
(Note)   *The buttons outlined in dotted lines are not saved and cannot be selected.*

```
Program Sort                          Done

         1~100    101~200   201~300

Store             Previ-    Next
                  ous
Change    1    2    3    4    5

Delete    6    7    8    9    10

          11   12   13   14   15

          16   17   18   19   20
```

3 Press the [Next] button if the number is over 20.
Press the [101 – 200] button if the number is over 100, and the [201 – 300] button if it is over 200.

```
Program Sort                          Done

         1~100    101~200   201~300

Store             Previ-    Next
                  ous
Change    1    2    3    4    5

Delete    6    7    8    9    10

          11   12   13   14   15

          16   17   18   19   20
```
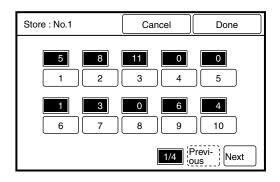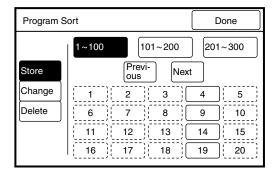
4 Select the distribution group
destination number, and enter the
number of copies to be made on
the keypad.

(Note)   *Press the [Next] button if the*
number is over 11.
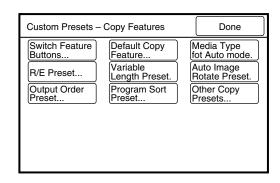
Store : No.1		Cancel		Done
5	8	11	0	0
1	2	3	4	5
1	3	0	6	4
6	7	8	9	10

1/4 Previous Next

5 Press the [Done] button.
The screen will return to the [Program
Sort Preset] screen.

6 Press the [Done] button when all
values have been set.
The specified parameters will be
saved and the screen will return to the
[Custom Presets – Copy Features]
screen.

Program Sort				Done
	1~100	101~200	201~300	
Store		Previous	Next	
Change	1	2	3	4	5
Delete	6	7	8	9	10
	11	12	13	14	15
	16	17	18	19	20

Changing Program Sort Presets

1 Select [Program Sort Preset] on the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.

```
Custom Presets – Copy Features        [ Done ]

[Switch Feature  ] [Default Copy    ] [Media Type     ]
[Buttons...      ] [Feature...      ] [fot Auto mode. ]

[R/E Preset...   ] [Variable        ] [Auto Image     ]
                   [Length Preset.  ] [Rotate Preset. ]

[Output Order    ] [Program Sort    ] [Other Copy     ]
[Preset...       ] [Preset...       ] [Presets...     ]
```
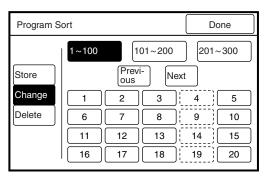
2 Press the [Change] button and select the program number to be changed.
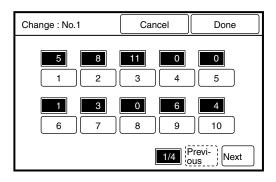
(Note)
- *The buttons outlined in dotted lines are not saved and cannot be selected.*
- *Press the [Next] button if the number is to be over 20, the [101 - 200] button if it is over 100, and the [201 - 300] button if it is over 200.*
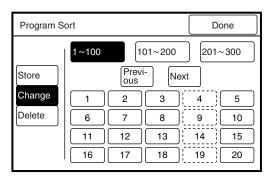
```
Program Sort                          [ Done ]

        [ 1~100 ] [ 101~200 ] [ 201~300 ]

[Store ]           [Previ-] [Next]
                   [ous   ]
[Change]   [ 1 ] [ 2 ] [ 3 ] [ 4 ] [ 5 ]
[Delete]   [ 6 ] [ 7 ] [ 8 ] [ 9 ] [ 10 ]
           [ 11 ][ 12 ][ 13 ][ 14 ][ 15 ]
           [ 16 ][ 17 ][ 18 ][ 19 ][ 20 ]
```

3 Select the distribution group destination number, and enter the number of copies to be made with the use of the keypad.

(Note) *Press the [Next] button if the number is over 11.*

```
Change : No.1      [ Cancel ]    [ Done ]

   [ 5 ]  [ 8 ]  [ 11 ]  [ 0 ]  [ 0 ]
   [ 1 ]  [ 2 ]  [ 3 ]   [ 4 ]  [ 5 ]

   [ 1 ]  [ 3 ]  [ 0 ]   [ 6 ]  [ 4 ]
   [ 6 ]  [ 7 ]  [ 8 ]   [ 9 ]  [ 10 ]

                          [1/4][Previ-][Next]
                              [ous  ]
```

4 Press the [Done] button.
The screen will return to the [Program Sort Preset] screen.

```
Program Sort                          [ Done ]

        [ 1~100 ] [ 101~200 ] [ 201~300 ]

[Store ]           [Previ-] [Next]
                   [ous   ]
[Change]   [ 1 ] [ 2 ] [ 3 ] [ 4 ] [ 5 ]
[Delete]   [ 6 ] [ 7 ] [ 8 ] [ 9 ] [ 10 ]
           [ 11 ][ 12 ][ 13 ][ 14 ][ 15 ]
           [ 16 ][ 17 ][ 18 ][ 19 ][ 20 ]
```

5 Press the [Done] button when all values have been set.
The specified parameters will be saved accordingly, and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.

Deleting Program Sort Presets

1 Select [Program Sort Preset] on the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.

```
Custom Presets – Copy Features          [ Done ]

[Switch Feature    ] [Default Copy    ] [Media Type       ]
[Buttons...        ] [Feature...      ] [fot Auto mode.   ]
[R/E Preset...     ] [Variable        ] [Auto Image       ]
                     [Length Preset.  ] [Rotate Preset.   ]
[Output Order      ] [Program Sort    ] [Other Copy       ]
[Preset...         ] [Preset...       ] [Presets...       ]
```
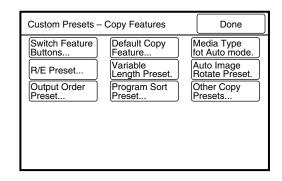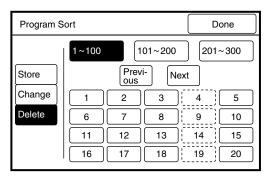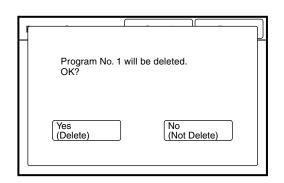
2 Press the [Delete] button and select the program sort number to be deleted.
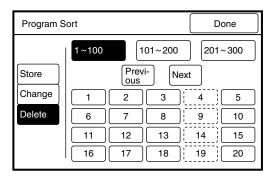
(Note)
- *The buttons outlined in dotted lines are not saved and cannot be selected.*
- *Press the [Next] button if the number is to be over 20, the [101 – 200] button if it is over 100, and the [201 – 300] button if it is over 200.*

```
Program Sort                            [ Done ]

            [ 1~100 ]  [ 101~200 ]  [ 201~300 ]

[Store ]          [Previ-]  [Next]
                  [ous   ]
[Change]    [ 1 ] [ 2 ] [ 3 ] [ 4 ] [ 5 ]
[Delete]    [ 6 ] [ 7 ] [ 8 ] [ 9 ] [ 10]
            [ 11] [ 12] [ 13] [ 14] [ 15]
            [ 16] [ 17] [ 18] [ 19] [ 20]
```

3 Select [Yes (Delete)] on the confirmation message.
The selected sort program will be deleted, and screen will return to the [Program Sort Preset] screen.

```
    Program No. 1 will be deleted.
    OK?

    [Yes       ]          [No           ]
    [(Delete)  ]          [(Not Delete) ]
```

4 Press the [Done] button when all values have been set.
The specified parameters will be saved accordingly, and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.

```
Program Sort                            [ Done ]

            [ 1~100 ]  [ 101~200 ]  [ 201~300 ]

[Store ]          [Previ-]  [Next]
                  [ous   ]
[Change]    [ 1 ] [ 2 ] [ 3 ] [ 4 ] [ 5 ]
[Delete]    [ 6 ] [ 7 ] [ 8 ] [ 9 ] [ 10]
            [ 11] [ 12] [ 13] [ 14] [ 15]
            [ 16] [ 17] [ 18] [ 19] [ 20]
```

Setting Up the Other Copy Presets

The other copy presets are used to set up additional, detailed copy presets. Enter the [Code] number and the [New] parameters from the table below to set up the other system presets.

Code	Function	New parameter	Default
0	Sets the roll or tray from which to feed the banner sheet.	Roll 1: 0 Roll 2: 1 Roll 3: 2 Roll 4: 3	Roll 1:0
1	Sets up the length of the banner sheet.	210 to 15,000 mm	210 mm
2	Sets up the media type for the banner sheet.	Ordinary: 0 Tracing: 1 Film: 2	Ordinary: 0
3	Determines whether or not to use the smoothing function when printing.	Yes: 1 No: 0	No: 0
4	Determines whether or not to use the smoothing function when copying.	Yes: 1 No: 0	No: 0
5	Sets up the default value for the cursor ([▶] mark) on the control panel's [Independent Portrait/Landscape Percentage] setup screen.	Not set: 0 Portrait: 1 Landscape: 2	Portrait: 1
6	Determines whether or not to perform a synchronized cut when printing a sample copy.	OFF: 0 ON (Synchronized Cut): 1	ON (Synchronized Cut): 1
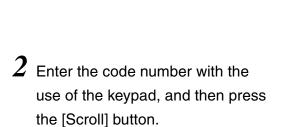
Note)   *Smoothing is a function that prints copies at a higher resolution (1200 dpi).The smoothing function corrects jaggedness on angled lines and smooths images. This can be set up separately for both copying and printing.*
Halftones may print darker than usual when the smoothing function is used.

Procedure
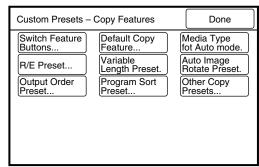
1 Select [Other Copy Presets] on the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.

```
Custom Presets – Copy Features          Done

Switch Feature      Default Copy        Media Type
Buttons...          Feature...          fot Auto mode.

R/E Preset...       Variable            Auto Image
                    Length Preset.      Rotate Preset.

Output Order        Program Sort        Other Copy
Preset...           Preset...           Presets...
```

2 Enter the code number with the use of the keypad, and then press the [Scroll] button.
The [▶] mark will move to the next field.

```
Other Copy Presets                      Done

    Code            Current             New

▶     2               0                   0

                                        Scroll
```
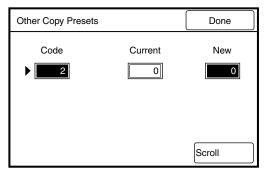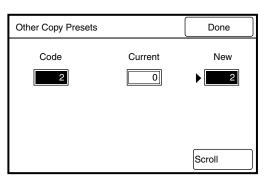
3 Enter the new value with the use of the keypad, and then press the [Scroll] button.

```
Other Copy Presets                      Done

    Code            Current             New

      2               0             ▶     2

                                        Scroll
```

4 Press the [Done] button.
The specified values will be saved and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets – Copy Features] screen.

5.4 Meter Check

This function displays the current total media usage of the machine. The meter counts below are displayed.

- Meter 1:   Displays the total area of media printed in square feet or square meters.
- Meter 2:   Displays the total length of paper printed in feet or in meters.
- Meter 3:   Displays the total number of stamps printed.
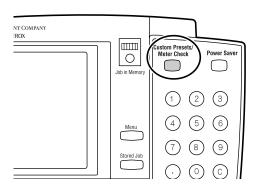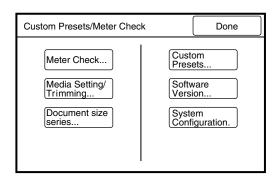
Procedure

1 Press the <Custom Presets/Meter Check> key on the control panel.

2 Press the [Meter Check] button.

The meter check screen will be displayed.

3 Press the [Done] button to return to the [Custom Presets/Meter Check] screen.
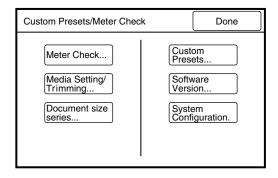
5.5 Document Size Series

This feature selects the size series for document size detection. The choices are [A size series], [B size series], [SP. A-1] (Special A-1), [SP. A-2] (Special A-2), [ANSI], and [ARCH]. The default value when shipped from the factory is [A size series].
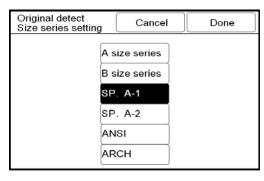
> **Note** *ARCH-30 documents are included within the [ARCH] series.*

Procedure

1 Select [Document Size Series] on the [Custom Presets/Meter Check] screen.

```
Custom Presets/Meter Check              Done

   Meter Check...            Custom
                             Presets...
   Media Setting/            Software
   Trimming...               Version...
   Document size             System
   series...                 Configuration.
```

2 Select the required size series.

3 Press the [Done] button.
The selection will be saved and the screen will return to the [Custom Presets/Meter Check] screen.

```
Original detect        Cancel      Done
Size series setting

              A size series
              B size series
              SP. A-1
              SP. A-2
              ANSI
              ARCH
```

Chapter 6

Scanner Functions

6.1 Overview

The 6030/6050 Wide Format Copier/Printer offers three different functions: printer, copier, and integrated scanner. The following operating modes are available when the machine is used as a scanner.

(Note) *The sizes of the scan files will vary due to differences in image density and complexity.*

Scanner Mode

This mode allows the scanner to be used independently from the printer. The scanner scans images and transmits the image data to the host PC. The scanning parameters reside in the software which is installed on the host PC.

Scan and Copy Mode
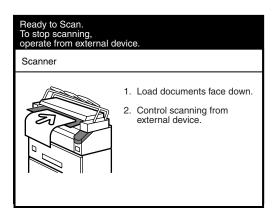
This mode allows copies to be made while scanning to a host PC is being performed. These operations are the same as those for the copier.

Scanning Procedures

This section explains the basic scanning procedures.

Scanner Mode Procedure

1 Activate the scanner mode from the host PC.

[Ready to Scan] will display on the copier control panel touch screen.

```
Ready to Scan.
To stop scanning,
operate from external device.

Scanner

                        1.  Load documents face down.

                        2.  Control scanning from
                            external device.
```
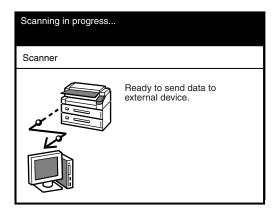
2 Insert the document in the scanner face down, with the edge aligned with the document insertion guide.

(Note)   *If scanning is set to manual start, press the <Start> key at this time.*
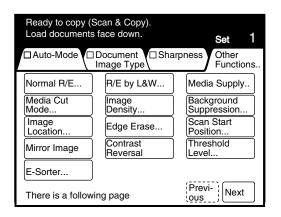
The machine will scan the document, and the scan data will be transmitted to the host PC.

```
Scanning in progress...

Scanner

                        Ready to send data to
                        external device.
```

3 Terminate the scanner mode at the host PC. The copier/printer will return to the copier mode.

Scan and Copy Mode Procedure

1 Activate the scan and copy mode from the host PC. The copier menu will be displayed on the copier control panel's touch screen.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ Ready to copy (Scan & Copy).             │
│ Load documents face down.      Set   1   │
│ ┌─────────┬──────────┬──────────┬─────────┐
│ │☐Auto-Mode│☐Document │☐Sharpness│Other    │
│ │         │Image Type│          │Functions..│
│ ┌─────────────┐ ┌─────────────┐ ┌─────────────┐
│ │Normal R/E...│ │R/E by L&W...│ │Media Supply..│
│ └─────────────┘ └─────────────┘ └─────────────┘
│ ┌─────────────┐ ┌─────────────┐ ┌─────────────┐
│ │Media Cut    │ │Image        │ │Background   │
│ │Mode...      │ │Density...   │ │Suppression..│
│ └─────────────┘ └─────────────┘ └─────────────┘
│ ┌─────────────┐ ┌─────────────┐ ┌─────────────┐
│ │Image        │ │Edge Erase...│ │Scan Start   │
│ │Location...  │ │             │ │Position...  │
│ └─────────────┘ └─────────────┘ └─────────────┘
│ ┌─────────────┐ ┌─────────────┐ ┌─────────────┐
│ │Mirror Image │ │Contrast     │ │Threshold    │
│ │             │ │Reversal     │ │Level...     │
│ └─────────────┘ └─────────────┘ └─────────────┘
│ ┌─────────────┐                ┌──────┐┌──────┐
│ │E-Sorter...  │                │Previ-││Next  │
│ └─────────────┘                │ous   ││      │
│ There is a following page      └──────┘└──────┘
└─────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

2 Set up the copy features on the copier control panel.

(Note)   *[Multi-Job] cannot be selected while in the scan and copy mode.*

3 Insert the document in the scanner face down, with the edge aligned with the document insertion guide.
The machine will scan the document and transmit the scan data to the host PC. The printer will print the copies simultaneously.

4 Terminate the scan and copy mode at the host PC. The copier/printer will return to the copy mode.

Chapter 7

Printer Overview

7.1 Overview of the 6030/6050 Wide Format Print Service

This section provides an overview of the 6030/6050 Wide Format print service.

What is the 6030/6050 Wide Format Print Service?

The 6030/6050 Wide Format print service is software that processes print jobs that it receives from a client. The 6030/6050 Wide Format print service enables all types of image data to be printed in the supported formats, including standard and non-standard size documents, enlarged and reduced images, and split (fragmented) images. It also allows the user to view the status of print jobs, cancel print jobs, and change print job priority.

Data Formats that can be Processed

Processing is possible for the following data formats.
- HP-GL formats (HP-GL, HP-GL/2, HP-RTL)
- VERSATEC formats (VRF, VCGL)
- TIFF formats (conforming to TIFF Revision 6.0)
- CALS formats (CALS Type 1)
- PS/PDF formats (PostScript 3.0, PDF Version 1.3)(Optional)

Communication Interfaces

The following communication interfaces are supported.
- Ethernet (100Base-TX and 10Base-T)
- RS232C
- Centronics (optional)
- VPI (optional)

Printing Methods

Documents may be submitted from a client to the 6030/6050 Wide Format Printer using any of the following.

- Ethernet (Direct) Printing

This capability is for UNIX systems. Printing takes place over TCP/IP networks using the ftp and lpr commands.

(Refer to) *Refer to "Chapter 11 Ethernet Print Service (for UNIX)" for details on available functions.*

- Wide Format Windows Driver

The Microsoft® Windows® print drivers (32 bit only) enable users to print documents from various Windows applications.

(Important) *Serial output is not supported by the Wide Format Windows Driver.*

(Refer to) *Refer to the Xerox 6030/6050/6204 Wide Format Windows Driver User Guide for details on available functions.*

- BT-PlotAssistant (Ver. 3.4.0 or later)(Optional)

BT-PlotAssistant is printer support software that runs on Windows operating systems. Using BT-PlotAssistant's simple user interface, the user can submit documents to the 6030/6050 Wide Format printer.

(Refer to) *Refer to the Xerox 6030/6050/6204 Wide Format BT Plot Assistant User Guide for details on available functions.*

- PostScript/PDF Driver (PS/PDF)(Optional)

The PostScript/PDF driver provides enhanced printing performance and enables users to print PDF documents. The customer who purchases the PS/PDF driver is provided with a Feature Key which is required for driver installation.

(Refer to) *Refer to the Xerox 6030/6050/6204 Wide Format PostScript Driver User Guide for details on available functions.*
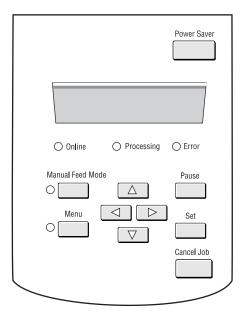
Print Service Operations

The printer control panel and Print Services on Web are the two main features that enable users to set up and perform print service operations.

Printer Control Panel

The printer control panel can be used to perform a variety of tasks, among them:
- media setup for roll media and the MSI (Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Tray)
- communication (port) setup
- system parameter setup
- printing of test patterns to verify printer operation
- job log and error log management
- reprinting of the most recent print job
- displaying billing meter information

(Refer to) *Refer to "7.2 Printer Control Panel Usage" for more details on the printer control panel and its usage.*

Print Services on Web

Print Services on Web is web server software which is pre-installed in the 6030/6050 Wide Format. Print Services on Web provides a user-friendly way to perform printer setup, communication (port) setup, log management, and other procedures via a web browser.

Print Services on Web also enables the user to perform operations which can not be performed from the printer control panel, for example, displaying job lists, changing job priority, and starting and stopping the server.

Refer to *Refer to "7.3 Print Services on Web" for further details on Print Services on Web and its operation.*
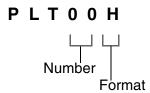
Main Printing Functions

This section describes the main printing functions which are available with the 6030/6050 Wide Format Printer and Copier/Printer.

Logical Printers

A logical (virtual) printer is a group of saved print job settings for a particular data format, i.e., HP-GL, Versatec, TIFF, CALS, and PS/PDF. These saved settings, which are created using Print Services on Web, may include pen attributes, media type, print quantity, and the other parameters that define the print job that the logical printer will be required to perform. Logical printers are to printing as Stored Jobs are to copying, that is, both reduce setup time and increase efficiency by using previously saved settings. A maximum of one hundred logical printers can be set up within one 6030/6050 Wide Format Printer or Copier/Printer for each supported data format.

Logical printer names are assigned based on the following. It is not possible to change these names.

```
P L T 0 0 H
```
Number
Format

1st to 3rd digits	[PLT] or [plt] character strings
4th to 5th digits (number)	Two-digit number from 00 to 99
6th digit (format)	Any of the following.
	H: HP-GL format
	V: Versatec format
	T: TIFF format
	C: CALS format
	A: PS/PDF format (optional)

The sixth digit can be omitted when Ethernet multi-data format functions are in use. When this digit is omitted, the relevant software to be started will be selected according to the extension log of the transmitted data file.
If a logical printer is selected that has a different sixth digit than the format of the print file, the file may be forwarded to a logical printer that has the same extension as the transmitted file.

Document Size Input

The following two methods are available for judging the size of the input document:

- Automatic — Calculates the coordinates of the input document and automatically selects the closest size.
- Size Specification — Enables the user to manually select the media size of the input image. The media size can be selected from standard sizes and user-defined sizes.

The Automatic setting is used under normal circumstances. Specify the size manually if restrictions are to be placed on the input coordinates. When the size is specified, all areas that exceed that size will be cut off.

Media Size Output

The following two methods for judging the size of the output media are available:
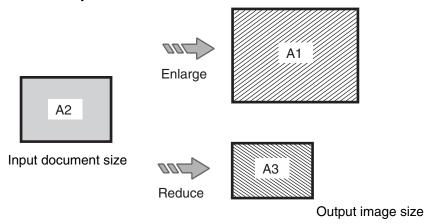
- Automatic — When Automatic is selected, the print size is enlarged or reduced automatically based on a size mapping table (explained later). Also, the size of the media that is selected is determined based on a media mapping table, or by automatic mapping (explained later).
- Size Specification — When Size Specification is selected, the output media size is specified manually. If the specified media size is different from the input document size, the document will be enlarged or reduced to match the size of the paper.

"Automatic" is used under normal circumstances. Specify the media size manually if all output is to be printed on a single media size.

Size Mapping

Size mapping is the process of setting up a table that establishes relationships between input document sizes and output image sizes. When size mapping is finished (must be done prior to printing), documents can be enlarged or reduced automatically based on the table entries.
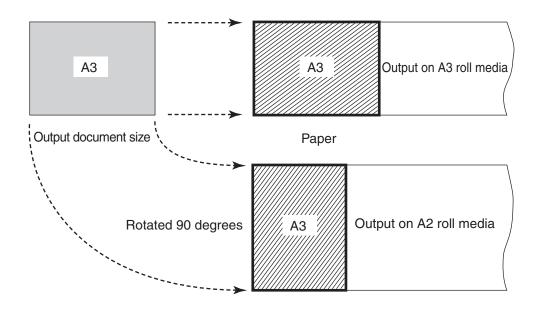
(Refer to) *Refer to " Size/Media Mapping" in "9.3 Logical Printer Print Settings" for more details.*

Media Mapping/Automatic Mapping

Media mapping is the process of setting up a table that establishes relationships between output image sizes and media sizes. This process, like size mapping, must be performed prior to printing. Once the media mapping table is finished, the media size is determined by the entries in the media mapping table.
When Automatic Mapping is selected, the output media size that matches the output image size will be selected.
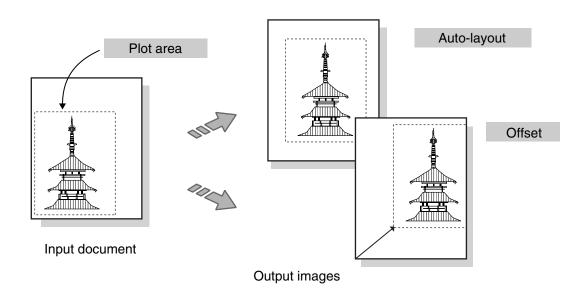
(Note) *Check media mapping to be sure the media size selected matches the media loaded in the printer. Refer to "9.3 Logical Printer Print Settings" for more details.*

Plot Area, Auto-Layout, and Offset

It is possible to print a specified area of an input document. The specified area can be printed in the center of the media or moved to another position (auto-layout, offset).
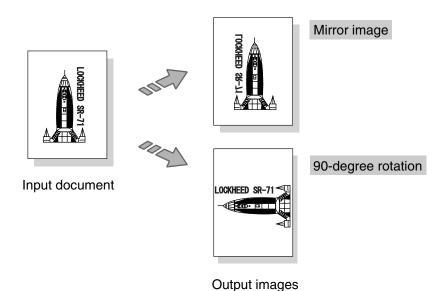
(Refer to) *Refer to the "Plot Area" section of "9.3 Logical Printer Print Settings" for details on available functions.*

Plot area

Auto-layout

Offset

Input document

Output images

Mirror Image, 90-Degree Rotation

These functions perform mirroring (Mirror Image) or 90-degree rotation processing on the output image.
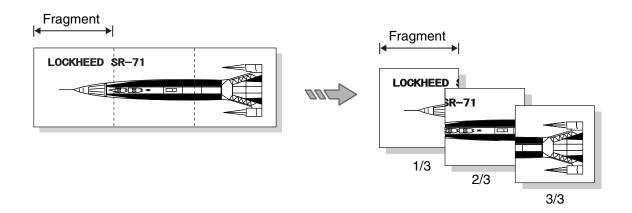
(Refer to) *Refer to the "Transform" section of "9.3 Logical Printer Print Settings" for details on available functions.*

Mirror image

90-degree rotation

Input document

Output images

Split Drawing (Image Fragmentation)

Long images (those that exceed 1,189 mm in length) may be split into several parts and printed. Positioning marks can be added to the split prints for positioning purposes.

(Refer to) *Refer to "Split Drawing" in "9.3 Logical Printer Print Settings" for more details.*

Printing the Output Time

The date and time a document is printed can be added to the edge of the document.

(Refer to) *Refer to the "Message Option" section of "9.3 Logical Printer Print Settings" for details on available functions.*

Log Management

It is possible to print out a log of completed print jobs, an error log, and other information.

(Refer to) *Refer to "10.4 Managing the Job and Error Logs" for details on printer control panel operations.*

Reprinting

The most recently printed document can be reprinted. The print quantity also can be specified.

(Note) *Reprinting is not possible with the Xerox 6030 WF or Xerox 6050 WF if a copy job is performed after the print operation.*

(Refer to) *Refer to "10.5 Reprinting" for details on available functions.*

Canceling Jobs

Jobs transmitted to the 6030/6050 Wide Format can be deleted by pressing the <Cancel Job> key on the printer control panel. It is also possible to cancel jobs from Print Services on Web.

(Refer to) *Refer to "7.2 Printer Control Panel Usage" for details on the <Cancel Job> key, and "9.5 Print Services on Web: Job and Log" for details on Print Service on Web operations.*

Meter Display

The billing meters can be checked from both Print Services on Web and the printer control panel.

(Refer to) *Refer to "9.6 Print Services on Web: Status" for details on web operations, and "10.6 Billing Meter Confirmation" for details on printer control panel operations.*

Job Recovery

This machine is equipped with a recovery function for media jams and when media runs out.

• Media Jams

Documents that failed to print because of a media jam will print when the jam is cleared.

• No Media
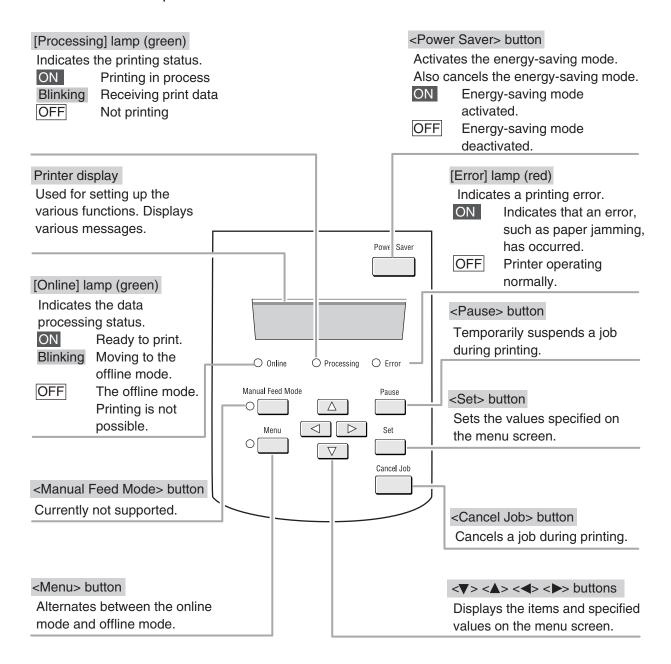
Printing of a print job that is stored in memory will restart when the media is loaded in the printer.

The printer also can be set up to print (or not print) jobs that remained in the print queue when the printer was switched off.

(Refer to) *Refer to "8.4 System Parameter Setup (Printer Control Panel)" and to the topic "Setting Up [Job Recovery]" in "8.5 System Parameter Setup (Print Services on Web)" for details on job processing after the power is switched on.*

7.2 Printer Control Panel Usage

This section describes the names and functions of the printer control panel components.

[Processing] lamp (green)

Indicates the printing status.

ON	Printing in process
Blinking	Receiving print data
OFF	Not printing

<Power Saver> button

Activates the energy-saving mode.
Also cancels the energy-saving mode.

ON	Energy-saving mode activated.
OFF	Energy-saving mode deactivated.

Printer display

Used for setting up the various functions. Displays various messages.

[Error] lamp (red)

Indicates a printing error.

ON	Indicates that an error, such as paper jamming, has occurred.
OFF	Printer operating normally.

[Online] lamp (green)

Indicates the data processing status.

ON	Ready to print.
Blinking	Moving to the offline mode.
OFF	The offline mode. Printing is not possible.

<Pause> button

Temporarily suspends a job during printing.

<Set> button

Sets the values specified on the menu screen.

<Manual Feed Mode> button

Currently not supported.

<Cancel Job> button

Cancels a job during printing.

<Menu> button

Alternates between the online mode and offline mode.

<▼> <▲> <◀> <▶> buttons

Displays the items and specified values on the menu screen.

Power Saver

○ Online   ○ Processing   ○ Error

Manual Feed Mode   Pause   △   ▷   ◁   ▽

Menu   Set   Cancel Job

Note : *Press the < ◀ > and < ▶> keys simultaneously to reset the printer when an error code is displayed.*

Basic Printer Control Panel Operations

The printer must be in the offline mode before settings can be changed.
Pressing the <Menu> key switches the printer to the offline mode and displays the menu screen.
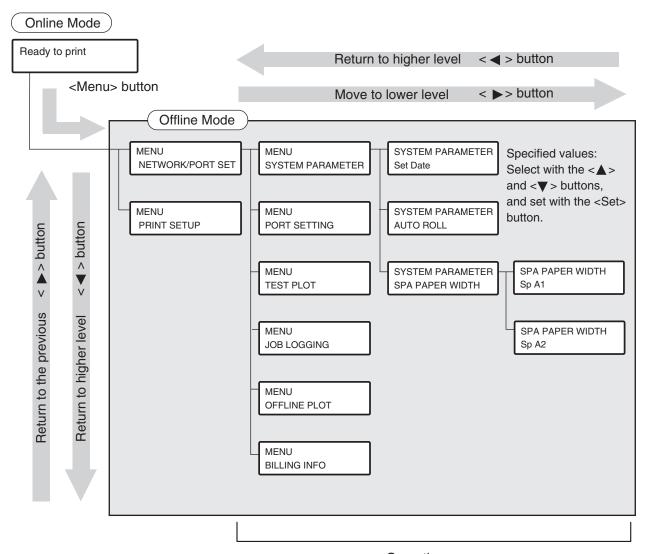
Button Functions

The following buttons are used to navigate the menu screen.

<Menu> key	Switches the printer to the offline mode and displays the menu screen. The printer returns to the online mode when this button is pressed again.
<▲> key	Displays the previous menu item or value on the same menu level.
<▼> key	Displays the next menu item or value on the same menu level.
<▶> key	Displays the lower level menu item.
<◀> key	Displays the higher level menu item.
<Set> key	Accepts the value selected by the user. An asterisk [*] displays on the right side of the value once it is selected by pressing the <Set> key.

Overview of the Operation Menu

The printer control panel's operation menu is depicted in the image below. Descriptions of the sub-menus follow.

Operation menu

SYSTEM PARAMETER MENU

Sets up the system management information, such as the system date and power save mode settings.

(Refer to) *Refer to "8.4 System Parameter Setup (Printer Control Panel)" for setup procedures.*

PORT SETTING MENU

Sets up the communication parameters that are required for connecting to the host.

(Refer to) *Refer to "8.2 Communication Parameter Setup (Printer Control Panel)" for set up procedures.*

TEST PLOT MENU

Prints test patterns to help verify printer operation.

(Refer to) *Refer to "10.3 Test Printing" for logical printer details and operations.*

JOB LOGGING MENU

Prints job and error logs.

(Refer to) *Refer to "10.4 Managing the Job and Error Logs" for logical printer details and operations.*

OFFLINE PLOT MENU

Reprints the most recently printed job.

(Refer to) *Refer to "10.5 Reprinting" for logical printer details and operations.*

BILLING INFO MENU

Displays the amount of roll media that has been used for both copy and print jobs in linear and square feet and meters.

(Refer to) *Refer to "10.6 Billing Meter Confirmation" for logical printer details and operations.*

Operation Examples

This section provides examples of how to select menu items.

<Menu> key

```
MENU
  NETWORK/PORT SET
```

1 Press the <Menu> key.
The machine will enter the offline mode.

< ▶> key

```
MENU
SYSTEM  PARAMETER
```

2 Press the < ▶ > key.
The top selection in the [NETWORK/PORT SET] menu will display.

<▼> key

```
MENU
  PORT  SETTING
```

3 Press the <▼> key.
The menu items will display in order.

(Note) *The previous menu will display if the <▲> key is pressed.*

< ▶> key

```
PORT  SETTING
  TCP/IP
```

4 Press the < ▶ > key.
The sub-menu items will display.

<▼><▲> key

```
PORT  SETTING
  SERIAL
```

5 Press the <▼> key.
The menu items on the same level will display in order.

< ▶> key

```
SERIAL
  Handshake
```

6 Press the < ▶ > key.
The menu items on the next level will display.

< ◀ > key

```
PORT  SETTING
  SERIAL
```
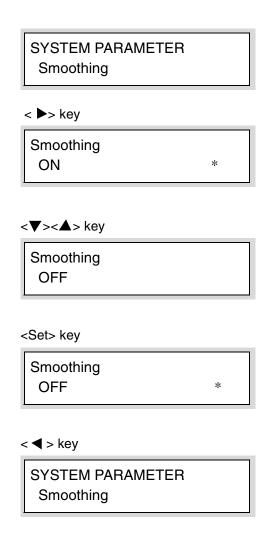
7 Press the < ◀ > key to return to the higher level.

< ◀ > key

```
MENU
  PORT  SETTING
```

8 Press the <◀ > key to return to an even higher level.

Setting Up a Value

This section provides an example of setting up a value.

```
SYSTEM PARAMETER
  Smoothing
```
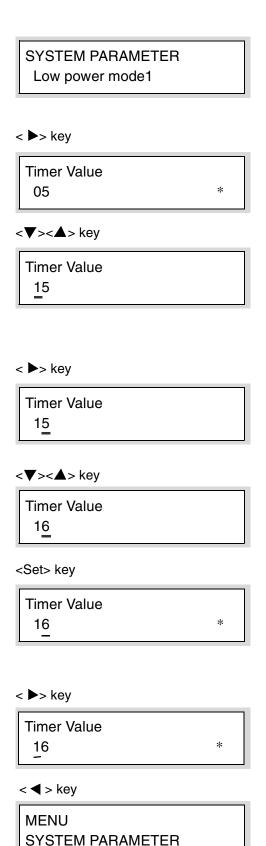
1 Select the menu item that you want to set up so that it displays on the screen.

< ▶ > key

```
Smoothing
  ON                    *
```

2 Press the < ▶ > key.
The current value will display.

(Note) *An asterisk [*] is displayed beside the current value.*

<▼><▲> key

```
Smoothing
  OFF
```

3 Use the <▲> and <▼> keys to change the setting.

(Note) *The asterisk [*] will be removed when the setting is changed.*

<Set> key

```
Smoothing
  OFF                   *
```

4 Press the <Set> key to specify and confirm the new value.
The asterisk [*] will display beside the new value.

< ◀ > key

```
SYSTEM PARAMETER
  Smoothing
```

5 Press the < ◀ > key to return to the next higher menu level.

Entering Numbers and Characters

This section provides examples of how to enter numbers and characters.

SYSTEM PARAMETER
 Low power mode1

1 Select the menu item that you want to set up.

< ▶> key

Timer Value
 05   ∗

2 Press the < ▶ > key.
The current setting for the selected item will display.

<▼><▲> key

Timer Value
 15
  ‾

3 Set up the first number using the <▲> and <▼> keys. The value will increase or decrease sequentially between 0 and 9.

(Note) *In the example on the left, press the <▲> key to display [2].*

< ▶> key

Timer Value
 15
 ‾

4 Press the < ▶ > key.
The cursor will move to the second number.

(Note) *Press the <◀ > key to return to the previous number.*

<▼><▲> key

Timer Value
 16
  ‾

5 Set up the second number using the <▲> and <▼> keys.

<Set> key

Timer Value
 16   ∗
  ‾

6 Set up all other numbers in the same way. Press the <Set> key after all numbers are set up.
The [∗] mark will display beside the new value.

< ▶> key

Timer Value
 16   ∗
 ‾

7 Press the <◀ > key to move the cursor to the first number.

< ◀ > key

MENU
SYSTEM PARAMETER

8 Press the <◀ > key to return to the higher level menu.

7.3 Print Services on Web

Print Services on Web is web server software which is pre-installed in the 6030/6050 Wide Format. Print Services on Web enables the user to perform the following procedures from a workstation using a web browser.

- Set up communication parameters
- Set up logical printers (print setup)
- Display the machine status
- Manage print jobs
- Manage job and error logs
- Set up system parameters
- Print test patterns

Operating Environment

Print Services on Web operates in the following environment.

Operating Systems   Microsoft® Windows®2000

Microsoft® Windows®XP

Microsoft® Windows® Server 2003

Browsers   Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6.x or later
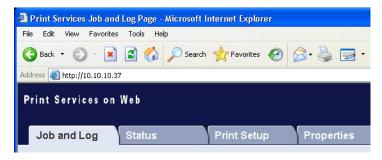
Important *Enable the java script setting when using Print Services on Web. Also, set the browser at [Don't use proxy server].*

Starting and Exiting Print Services on Web

This section explains how to start and exit Print Services on Web.

Start Print Services on Web

1 Start the browser.

2 Enter the URL for the 6030/6050 Wide Format (http://Home name or IP address) in the browser's address field, and then press the <Enter> key.

Exit Print Services on Web

1 To exit Print Services on Web, either click the [¥] button located at the top right corner of the browser, or select [File] > [Exit].
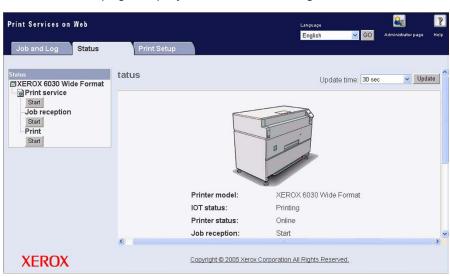
Print Services on Web Organization

This section explains the various pages contained within Print Services on Web.

User Page

This is the first page displayed when connecting with the Print Services on Web.

The user page allows users to do the following.

[Job and Log] tab   Check the status of a print job.
View and print a job log.

[Status tab]   Check the status of the Printer or Copier/Printer.
Start a print job.
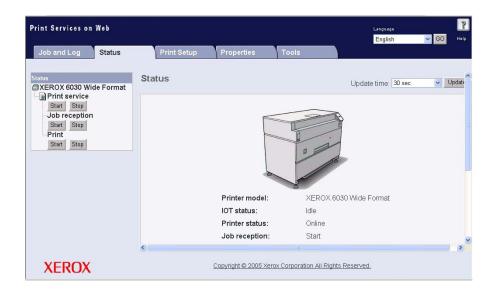
[Print Setup] tab   View the logical printer settings.

Administrator Page

The administrator page (see next page) displays after the user selects the [Administrator page] button on the user page, and then enters the user name and password in the logon dialog box.

The administrator page permits the following.

[Job and Log] tab
- Check the status of jobs in the print queue.
- View and print the job log and the error log.
- Cancel a print job.
- Change the priority of a print job.

[Status tab]
- Check the status of the Printer or Copier/Printer.
- Stop and start print services (job reception and printing).
- Stop and start job reception from client computers.
- Stop and resume print jobs.

[Print Setup] tab
- Set up new logical printers for each of the supported data formats (HP-GL, TIFF, CALS, VERSATEC, PS/PDF).
- Edit the settings of existing logical printers.

[Properties] tab
- View and change the machine configuration.
- View and change communications configurations.
- Manage ftp users.
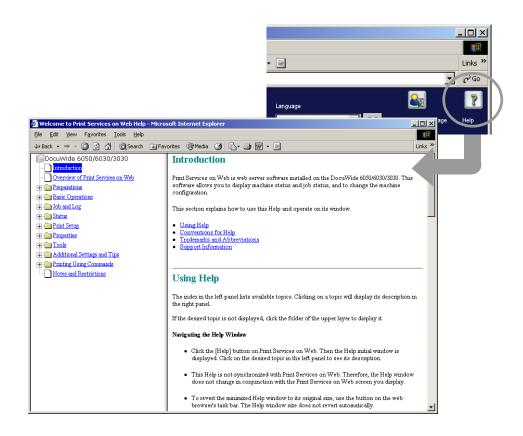
[Tools] tab
- Print a test pattern to verify machine (printer) operation.
- Print a Diagnostic Report.

Online Help

Click the Help [**?**] button displayed at the top, right corner of the window to display the online help. The online help enables you to answer many questions related to using Print Services on Web.

Chapter 8

Printer Setup

8.1 Communication Parameters

The 6030/6050 Wide Format Printer and Copier/Printer must be connected to a host PC before printing can be performed. Once the Printer or Copier/Printer is connected to the network, the communication parameters must be set up. The communication parameters can be set up from either the printer control panel or from Print Services on Web. This section explains how to use both methods to perform the setup procedures. Explained, too, is the procedure for printing a list of the communication parameters.

Communication Parameters Definitions

Communication parameters may be defined for the following.

- TCP/IP
- Serial
- Centronics (optional)
- VPI (optional)
- SNMP

Important *SNMP can only be set up from Print Services on Web.*

TCP/IP

Important *The communication parameter nomenclature on the printer control panel will sometimes differ from the nomenclature on Print Services on Web. The Print Service on Web nomenclature appears in **bold** type in the table below.*

The following TCP/IP communication parameters must be set up.

Menu Item	Description
Default Parser	Selects the parser or data format interpreter that will be used when the input data format has not been specified from among the available selections, that is, [HPGL], [VERSATEC], [TIFF], [CALS], or [PS/PDF]. The default setting is [HPGL].
Ethernet Setting (**Physical Layer**)	Selects the ethernet setting/physical layer. The default setting is [AUTO]. [AUTO] Automatic recognition [10BASE_T] Fixed at 10BASE_T [100BASE_T] Fixed at 100BASE_T
IP Address	The IP address of the machine in the format XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX. The IP address can be changed, if necessary.
MASK Value (**Net mask**)	The sub-net mask set up on the machine in the format XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX. The subnet mask can be changed, if necessary.
E-Net Address (**Ethernet address**)	Displays the Ethernet address. The value displayed is unique for the hardware and cannot be changed.
FTP	Determines whether or not to enable FTP. The default setting is [Enable].
Dynamic Routing	Determines if dynamic routing will be enabled. The default setting is [ON].
Static Routing*	Determines if static routing will be enabled. The default setting is [OFF]. Set Static Routing to [ON] when you need to view the device through a gateway or router.

*The routing table can be edited if [Static Routing] is set to [Enable].

(Note)   *A maximum of 512 items can be saved in the routing table. The [Registration Not Possible] screen will display if the number of items exceeds 512.*

Menu Item	Description
ROUTING TABLE	Select [ADD] to enter additional routing information.
Dest. Address	Sets the network address for the destination. Enter in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format. Typically not needed.
Router Address	Sets the router address for the local machine or subnet. Enter in the XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX format.

Serial

The serial communication parameters are listed below.

> **Important** *The communication parameter nomenclature on the printer control panel will sometimes differ from the nomenclature on Print Services on Web. The Print Service on Web nomenclature appears in **bold** type in the table below.*

Menu Item	Description
Default Parser	The default setting is [HP-GL].
Logical printer number	Sets up a logical printer number to be use if a logical printer is not defined in the print job.
Handshake	Selects the handshake method from the following choices. The default setting is [XON/XOFF]. [XON/XOFF] Handshake using the XON/XOFF protocol. [HARDWARE] Handshake using the hardware. [ENQ-ACK] Handshake using the ENQ-ACK protocol (HP-GL only). [SOFTWARE] Handshake using the application program (HP-GL only).
Baud Rate	Sets the communication speed to [300], [1200], [2400], [4800], [9600], or [19200]. The default setting is [9600].
Parity	Sets the parity bit to [NONE], [EVEN], or [ODD]. The default setting is [EVEN].
Data Bit	Sets the data bit length to [7_BITS] or [8_BITS]. The default setting is [7_BIT].
Stop Bit	Sets the stop bit length to [1_BIT] or [2_BIT]. The default setting is [1_BIT].
EOP Timeout	Determines whether or not to enable EOP timeout. The default setting is [ON] or [Enable].
Timeout Value	Sets up the EOP timeout value within a range of 1 to 255 seconds. If a value greater than 255 is entered, the timeout value will be set to 255. The default setting is [10].
Output Response	Enables [YES] or disables [NO] the output response. This must be set to [YES] if the printer requires a response when data is transmitted from the host to the printer. The default setting is [NO].

Menu Item	Description	
Job Separation (**Page limit**)	Sets up the job separation option. The default setting is [NO].	
	[YES]	Starts data conversion once the command that recognizes the end of the data is received, even if it occurs midway through the file.
	[NO]	Spools data on the hard disk until the timeout is issued.

Centronics (optional)

The Centronics communication parameters are presented below.

Menu Item	Description
Ack Mode	The Ack mode is selected from [MODE0], [MODE1], [MODE2], [MODE3], and [MODE7]. The default setting is [MODE0].
DMA Timeout	The timeout value for data input is entered within a range of 1 to 255 seconds. The default setting is [5 sec].
EOP Timeout	Determines if the EOP Timeout will be enabled [TIMEOUT] or disabled [NO_TIMEOUT]. If set to [TIMEOUT], a Timeout Value must be entered. The timeout value is entered within a range of 0 to 99 seconds. The default setting is [10 sec].
Job Separation	Sets the job separation. The default setting is [NO]. [YES] Starts conversion processing once the command that recognizes the end of the data is received, even if this occurs midway through the file. [NO] Performs the spooling process on the hard disk until a timeout is issued.

(Note)
- *If a value higher than [255] is entered for the DMA Timeout value, [255] will be set as the value.*
- *Changes to the [Ack Mode] and [DMA Timeout] values will have no effect on operations.*

VPI (optional)

The following VPI communication parameters must be set up.

Menu Item	Description
REPORT OFFLINE	Determines if the host will be notified offline of the media running out. The default setting is [NO]. [YES] Issues offline notification. [NO] Does not issue offline notification.
EOP Timeout	Determines if the EOP Timeout will be enabled [TIMEOUT] or disabled [NO_TIMEOUT]. If set to [TIMEOUT], a Timeout Value must be entered. The timeout value is entered within a range of 1 to 255* seconds. The default setting is [10 sec].
Job Separation	Sets the job separation. The default setting is [NO]. [YES] Starts conversion processing once the command that recognizes the end of the data is received, even if this occurs midway through the file. [NO] Performs the spooling process on the hard disk until a timeout is issued.

(Note) *If a value higher than [255] is entered for the timeout value, [255] will be set as the value.*

SNMP

The communication parameters listed below must be set up.

Important *SNMP must be set up in Print Services on Web.*

Important *The communication parameter nomenclature on the printer control panel will sometimes differ from the nomenclature on Print Services on Web. The Print Service on Web nomenclature appears in **bold** type in the table below.*

Menu Item	Description
SNMP	Sets whether or not to enable SNMP.
Community String	Sets the community String to be imbedded when the client transmits SNMP packets.
Trap address	Sets the IP address of the destinations (trap transmission destinations) to which notifications are to be sent in the event of an error occurring with the printer. A maximum of 128 trap transmission destinations can be saved.
Transmission Port (**Send port**)	Sets the port numbers of the trap transmission destinations.
Version	Sets the version of the trap to be transmitted.
Permanence (**Persistence**)	Sets whether the trap transmission destination information is to be stored or not after the printer has been switched off. A maximum of eight items can be enabled for permanence.

8.2 Communication Parameter Setup (Printer Control Panel)

This section explains the procedures for setting up the communication parameters from the printer control panel.

> **Important** *SNMP must be set up from Print Services on Web.*

> **Important** *The changed parameters become valid after the machine is rebooted.*

Procedure

```
MENU
  PORT  SETTING
```

1 Press the < ▶ > key with [PORT SETTING] displayed.

```
PORT  SETTING
  TCP/IP
```

2 Select the interface that is to be set up with the use of the < ▼ > and < ▲ > keys, and then press the < ▶ > key.
[TCP/IP], [SERIAL], [CENTRO], and [VPI] will be displayed, in that order.

> **Note** *[CENTRO] and [VPI] are optional.*

```
TCP/IP
  Ethernet Setting
```

3 Select the parameters with the use of the < ▼ > and < ▲ > keys, and then press the <Set> key. An asterisk [*] will be displayed on the right side of the value once it has been set up.

```
Ethernet Setting
  AUTO            *
```

> **Note** *The changed parameters are saved to the system when the <Set> key is pressed. It is not necessary to save each change individually.*

> **Refer to** *Refer to the previous section for detailed information about each of the communication parameters.*

4 After setting up all of the parameters, switch the printer power off and then on for the changes to take effect.

TCP/IP Setup

```
PORT  SETTING
 TCP/IP
```

1 Display [TCP/IP] on the selection screen, and then press the < ▶ > key.

```
TCP/IP
 Default Parser
```

2 Select the item that is to be set up with the use of the <▼> and <▲> keys, and then press the < ▶ > key.
[Ethernet Setting], [Default Parser], [IP Address], [Mask Value], [E-Net Address], [Dynamic Routing], and [Static Routing] will be displayed in that order.

(Note) • *Additions can be made to the routing table when [Static Routing] is enabled.*
• *The [E-Net Address] can only be displayed, not changed.*

```
Default Parser
 HPGL               *
```

3 Select the parameters with the use of the <▼> and <▲> keys, and then press the <Set> key. An asterisk [*] will be displayed on the right side of the parameters once they have been set.

```
IP Address
 100. 000. 000. 000
```

Entering addresses

1. Move the cursor to the left and right with the use of the < ◀ > and < ▶ > keys.

```
IP Address
 120. 000. 000. 000
```

2. Select the required value with the use of the <▼> and <▲> keys. The value will increase or decrease sequentially between 0 and 9.

```
IP Address
 123. 123. 123. 001    *
```

3. Press the <Set> key once all values have been entered.

(Note) • *To proceed to the next menu, move the cursor to the right-hand side and press the < ▶ > key.*
• *To return to the previous menu, move the cursor to the left-hand side and press the < ◀ > key.*

```
Static Routing
  ON                    *
```

Adding items to the routing table

1. Select [ON] for [Static Routing], and then press the <Set> key.
   Now press the <▶> key.

```
ROUTING TABLE
  ADD
```

2. Select [ADD] for the [ROUTING TABLE], and then press the <▶> key.

```
Dest.  Address
  123. 000. 000. 000
```

3. Enter the destination address, and then press the <Set> key.
   After setting up the destination address, move the cursor to the right-hand side and press the <▶> key.

```
Router  Address
  123. 000. 000. 000
```

4. Enter the routing address, and then press the <Set> key.

   (Note)   *To return to the previous menu, move the cursor to the left-hand side and press the <◀> key.*

Serial Setup

```
PORT  SETTING
 SERIAL
```

1 Display [SERIAL] on the setup item selection screen, and then press the < ▶ > key.

```
SERIAL
 Baud Rate
```

2 Select the item that is to be set up with the use of the < ▼ > and < ▲ > keys, and then press the < ▶ > key.
[Handshake], [Baud Rate], [Parity], [Data Bit], [Stop Bit], [EOP Timeout], [Output Response], and [Job Separation] will be displayed in that order.

```
Baud Rate
 300              *
```

3 Select the parameters with the use of the < ▼ > and < ▲ > keys, and then press the <Set> key. An asterisk [*] will display on the right side of the parameters once they have been set.

Centronics (optional) Setup

```
PORT  SETTING
 CENTRO
```

1 Display [CENTRO] on the setup item selection screen, and then press the < ▶ > key.

```
CENTRO
 DMA Timeout
```

2 Select the item that is to be set up with the use of the <▼> and <▲> keys, and then press the < ▶ > key.
[Ack Mode], [DMA Timeout], [EOP Timeout], and [Job Separation] will display, in that order.

```
DMA Timeout
 005 sec                  ∗
```

3 Select the parameters with the use of the <▼> and <▲> keys, and then press the <Set> key. An asterisk [*] will display on the right side of the parameters once they have been set.

VPI (optional) Setup

```
PORT  SETTING
 VPI
```

1 Display [VPI] on the setup item selection screen, and then press the < ▶ > key.

```
VPI
 Job Separation
```

2 Select the item that is to be set up with the use of the < ▼ > and < ▲ > keys, and then press the < ▶ > key.
[REPORT OFFLINE], [EOP Timeout], and [Job Separation] will display, in that order.

```
Job Separation
 YES                *
```

3 Select the parameters with the use of the < ▼ > and < ▲ > keys, and then press the <Set> key. An asterisk [*] will display on the right side of the parameters once they have been set.

8.3 Communication Parameter Setup (Print Services on Web)
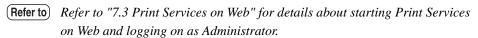
The communication parameters for TCP/IP, Serial, Centronics (optional), VPI (optional), and SNMP can be set up from Print Services on Web. These procedures are explained below.

Important • *The machine must be rebooted for the changes to take effect.*
• *These procedures are performed in the Administrator Mode.*

Procedure

1 Start Print Services on Web, enter the Administrator mode, and select the [Properties] tab.

Refer to *Refer to "7.3 Print Services on Web" for details about starting Print Services on Web and logging on as Administrator.*

Note *The displayed [Print settings] were set up earlier using the selections on the [Print Setup] and the [Properties] tabs. The hardware configuration information is stored in the machine's controller.*

2 Select the interface or protocol ([TCP/IP], [Serial], [Centro], [VPI], [SNMP]) to be set up from the [System parameters] menu.

The setup selections will display in the right-hand pane of the window. In the example below, [Serial] has been selected.

(Note) • *Only standard features and installed options are listed in the [System parameters] menu. [VPI] and/or [Centro] will be listed if one or both of these options is installed.*

(Refer to) • *Refer to the section " Communication Parameters Definitions" in "8.1 Communication Parameters" for more information about the communication parameter entries.*

3 Set up each of the parameters as required, and then select the [Apply] button.

4 To print a list of the settings, drag the right scroll bar to the bottom, and then select the [Print] button.

5 After setting up all of the parameters, switch the Main Power Switch off and then on to enable the changes to take effect.

8.4 System Parameter Setup (Printer Control Panel)

The following system parameters can be set up from the printer control panel.

(Note)   *These parameters can be set up on the copier control panel on the Xerox 6030/6050 Copier/Printers. If the parameters are set up on both the printer control panel and the copier control panel, the most recent settings will take precedence.*

(Refer to)   • *Refer to "7.2 Printer Control Panel Usage" for detailed instructions on printer control panel operations.*

Menu Item	Description
Set Date	Sets up the internal clock. The parameters are set in the order year, month, day, hour, and minutes.
AUTO ROLL	Determines whether the automatic paper switching function from the roll to the tray and tray to the roll is [ON] or [OFF]. The default setting is [OFF].
SPA PAPER WIDTH	Sets the paper width for SP. JIS/ISO A paper. The default value is [SP A1]. [SP. A1] 620 or 625mm [SP. A2] 435 or 440mm
Smoothing	Determines whether 1200 dpi smoothing will be [ON] or [OFF]. The default setting is [OFF].
Low power mode1	Sets the time (1 to 120 minutes) that must elapse following a copy or print job before the machine enters the Low power mode 1. Low power mode 1 reduces the temperature of the fuser, decreasing power consumption. The default setting is [5] minutes.
Low power mode2	Sets the time (5 to 120 minutes) that must elapse following a copy or print job before the machine enters low power mode 2. Low power mode 2 reduces the fuser temperature more than low power mode 1. The default setting is [15] minutes.
Sleep Mode	Sets the sleep mode to [ON] or [OFF] and sets the time (15 to 120 minutes) that must elapse after the previous copy or print job until the machine enters the sleep mode. The sleep mode switches off the power of the printer. The default setting is [90] minutes.
Attention Light	Not Available
Buzzer	Not Available

Menu Item	Description
Print Density	Sets up the default print density level. The density setting is a numeric value between -99 and 99.
Job Recovery	Determines how the jobs that were in the print queue when the printer power was shut off will be processed when the printer is switched back on. The default setting is [OFF].
	[OFF] Jobs that had not been output when the power was shut off are canceled (not printed).
	[QUEUED] Prints out only the [Queued] jobs waiting to be processed.
	[ALL] Prints out all jobs that have not been successfully completed.
	(Note) • *When [ALL] is selected, a ten-page job will be reprinted from page one when the power is restored, even if pages 1 to 9 had already printed before the power was shut off.* • *The sequence in which jobs are printed after the power is restored is based on the ID numbers that were assigned when each job was received.*
Net Cont. Time	Not available

Procedure

```
MENU
 SYSTEM PARAMETER
```

1 Press the < ▶ > key with [MENU]/[SYSTEM PARAMETER] displayed.

```
SYSTEM PARAMETER
 Job Recovery
```

2 Scroll to the item you wish to set up using the <▼> and <▲> keys. [Set Date], [AUTO ROLL], [SPA PAPER WIDTH], [Smoothing], [Low power mode1], [Low power mode2], [Sleep Mode], [Attention Light], [Print Density], [Job Recovery], and [Net Cont. Time] will display, in that order.. Press the < ▶ > key to select the item.

```
Job Recovery
 OFF                    *
```

3 Select the parameters using the <▼> and <▲> keys, and then press the <Set> key.
An asterisk [*] will display on the right side of the value once it is set.

(Note)   *The changed parameters are saved to the system when the <Set> key is pressed. It is not necessary to save each change individually.*

8.5 System Parameter Setup (Print Services on Web)

The system parameters listed below can be set up from Print Services on Web.

[Important] *These procedures are performed on the Administrator page.*

[Refer to] *Refer to "8.3 Communication Parameter Setup (Print Services on Web)" for information about setting up the [TCP/IP], [Serial], [Centro], [VPI], and [SNMP] selections in the [System Parameters] menu on the Properties tab.*
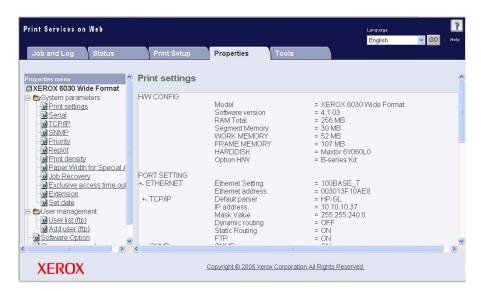
[Important] *The parameter nomenclature on Print Services on Web will sometimes differ from the nomenclature on the printer control panel. The printer control panel nomenclature appears in **bold type** in the table below.*

Menu Item	Description
Priority	Determines which of the following should be set up as the standard for determining the priority sequence of job output for the same job. [QIN_FOPEN] Time to start data transfer [QIN_FCLOSE] Time to end data transfer
Replot	Enables or disables the reprinting feature.
Print Density	Sets up the default print density level. The density setting is a numeric value between -99 and 99.
Paper Width for Special A (**SPA PAPER WIDTH**)	Sets the paper width for SP. JIS/ISO A paper. The default value is [SP A1]. [SP. A1] 620 or 625mm [SP. A2] 435 or 440mm

Menu Item	Description
Job Recovery	Determines how the jobs that were in the print queue when the printer power was shut off will be processed when the printer is switched back on. The default setting is [OFF].
	[OFF] — Jobs that had not been output when the power was shut off are canceled (not printed).
	[QUEUED] — Prints out only the [Queued] jobs waiting to be processed.
	[ALL] — Prints out all jobs that have not been successfully completed.
	(Note) • *When [ALL] is selected, a ten-page job will be reprinted from page one when the power is restored, even if pages 1 to 9 had already printed before the power was shut off.*
	• *The sequence in which jobs are printed after the power is restored is based on the ID numbers that were assigned when each job was received.*
Exclusive access time out (**Net Cont. Time**)	Not available
Extension	Sets up the extension that will be used to identify the format of each file. The extension is a maximum of eight alphanumeric characters (upper case or lower case) in length. A maximum of 32 extensions can be saved.
Set Date	Sets up the internal clock. The parameters are set in the order year, month, day, hour, and minutes.

Procedure

1 Start Print Services on Web, log in as Administrator, and display the [Properties] tab.

2 Select the item that is to be set up from the [System parameter menu], for example, [Priority], [Replot], [Print density], [Paper Width for Special A], [Job Recovery], [Exclusive access time out], [Extension], and [Set date].

Setting Up [Priority]

> (Note) *The [Priority] parameter in Print Services on Web is the same as the [Print service] parameter on the printer control panel.*

1 Select [Priority] from the [System parameters] menu.

The [Priority] selections will display in the right pane.

2 Select the queuing standard from [QIN_FOPEN] or [QIN_FCLOSE].

3 Press the [Apply] button to save the new setting, [Cancel] to revert to the existing setting, or [Reset to default] to return to the factory default setting.

Setting Up [Replot]

1 Select [Replot] from the [System parameters] menu.

The Replot setup selections will display in the right pane.

2 The parameter is enabled by default. De-select the checkbox to disable the feature. Disabling the feature will render the reprinting function inoperative.

3 Press the [Apply] button to save the new setting, [Cancel] to revert to the existing setting, or [Reset to default] to return to the factory default setting.

Setting Up [Print Density]

1 Select [Print density] from the [System parameters] menu.

The Print density selections will display in the right pane.

2 Enter a positive or a negative number between -99 and +99 to set up the default print density. Larger negative numbers lighten the prints. Higher positive numbers darken the prints. The factory default setting is [0].

3 Press the [Apply] button to save the new setting, [Cancel] to revert to the existing setting, or [Reset to default] to return to the factory default setting.

Setting Up [Paper Width for Special A]

1 Select [Paper Width for Special A] from the [System parameters] menu.
The Paper Width for Special A selections will display in the right pane.

2 Select the required paper width for Special A1 and Special A2 paper from the available selections.

3 Press the [Apply] button to save the new setting, [Cancel] to revert to the existing setting, or [Reset to default] to return to the factory default setting.

Setting Up [Job Recovery]

1 Select [Job Recovery] from the [System parameters] menu.

The Job Recovery selections will display in the right pane.

2 Select the option that will determine how jobs that are in the print queue when the printer power is shut off will be processed when the power is switched back on. The choices are [OFF], [Queued], and [All]. The default setting is [OFF].

3 Press the [Apply] button to save the new setting, [Cancel] to revert to the existing setting, or [Reset to default] to return to the factory default setting.

Setting Up [Extension]

1 Select [Extension] from the [System parameters] menu.

The Extension selections will display in the right pane.

2 Select the required format from [Data format].

3 As required, add or delete an extension:

Add an extension

To add a new extension, enter an extension name of eight characters or less in the text field, and then click the [Add] button.

Delete an extension
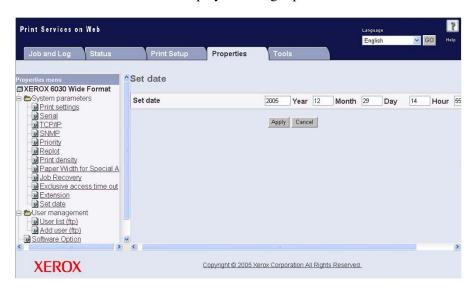
To delete an extension, click the [Delete] button. Click [OK] or [Cancel] on the warning popup to confirm or cancel your selection.

4 Press the [Apply] button to save the new setting(s), [Cancel] to revert to the existing setting, or [Reset to default] to return to the factory default setting.

Setting up [Set date]

1 Select [Set date] from the [System parameters] menu.

The Set date selections will display in the right pane.

2 Enter the date.

Note   *If the time selections are not displayed, drag the bottom scroll bar to the right to display them.*

3 Enter the time.

4 Press the [Apply] button to save the new setting, or press [Cancel] to revert to the existing setting.

8.6 User Management (Print Services on Web)

The User management menu on the [Properties] tab of Print Services on Web enables the administrator to perform the user management functions described in this section.

Changing User Passwords
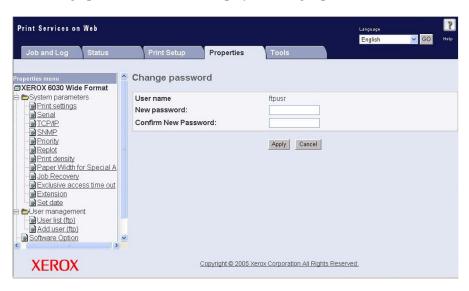
1 Select [User list (ftp)] from the [User management] menu.

A list of all current ftp users will display in the right pane.

(Note)   *Up to 10 users can be registered as ftp users.*

2 Click the [Password change] button for the user whose password is to be changed.
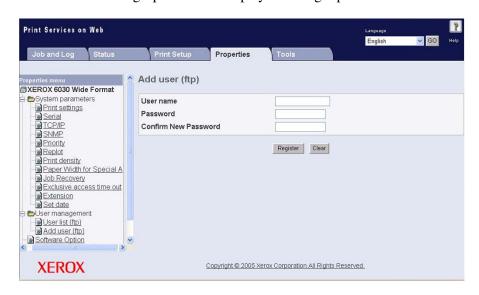
The Change password fields will display in the right pane of the window.

3 Enter the new password in the [New password] field.

4 Confirm the new password in the [Confirm New Password] field.

5 Click the [Apply] button to save the change, or [Cancel] to undo it.

Adding Users

1 Select [Add user (ftp)] from the [User management] menu.

The fields for adding ftp users will display in the right pane of the window.

2 Enter the user's name and password, confirm the password, and then click the [Register] button.

Deleting Users

1 Select [User list (ftp)] from the [User management] menu.

A list of all current ftp users will display in the right pane, including the default username [ftpusr] which is set up within the system and cannot be deleted.

2 Select the [Delete] button for the ftp username that you wish to delete.

> **Note**   *A warning popup will display if you attempt to delete [ftpusr].*

8.7 Printing a Configuration List

The procedures below explain how to print a configuration list that shows the hardware and software configuration, communication parameter (port) settings, and system parameter settings of the printer. This list may be printed from either the printer control panel or Print Services on Web.

From the Printer Control Panel

```
MENU
 PORT  SETTING
```

1 Press the < ▶ > key with [PORT SETTING] displayed.

```
PORT  SETTING
 PRINT  CONFIG
```

2 Select [PRINT CONFIG] with the < ▼ > key, and then press the < ▶ > key.

```
PRINT  CONFIG
 SET:  to Print.
```

3 Press the <Set> key when [SET: to Print.] is displayed.
The list of settings will be printed.

From Print Services on Web

1 Start Print Services on Web, log in as Administrator, and select the [Properties] tab.

2 Select [Print Settings] in the System parameters menu.
The current print settings will display in the right pane.

3 Using the scrollbar on the right side of the window, scroll to the bottom of the Print Settings list, and then select the [Print] button.
The printer will print a configuration list that is identical to the list from the printer control panel.

An example of the configuration list (settings printout) is shown below.

```
[PLOTTER CONFIGURATION] : PAGE1]                        [XEROX 6050 Wide Format Version 4.1.03]
────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────

   H/W CONFIG
                 Model             = XEROX 6050 Wide Format
                 Software Version  = 4.1.03
                 RAM Total         = 512MB
                 Segment Memory    = 30MB
                 Work Memory       = 52MB
                 Frame Memory      = 272MB
                 Harddisk          = Maxtor 6Y080L0
                 Option H/W        = FINISHER  MSI  B-KIT  2R-RFC
                 Finisher Model    = estefold 4211 V1.13 721

   S/W CONFIG
                 PostScript        = ENABLE
                 Network Scan      = DISABLE
                 Key Install key   = XXX-XX-XXX-XXX-XX-XXX

   PORT SETTING

   +- ETHERNET   Ethernet Setting  = 100BASE_T         : AUTO /10BASE_T /100BASE_T
                 Ethernet Address  = 003013F10A8C

     +- TCP/IP   Default Parser    = HP-GL             : VERSATEC /HP-GL /TIFF /CALS /PS/PDF
                 IP Address        = 10.10.6.154
                 Mask Value        = 255.255.240.0
                 Dynamic Routing   = OFF               : OFF /ON
                 Static Routing    = ON                : OFF /ON
                 FTP               = ON                : OFF /ON

     +- SNMP     SNMP              = ON                : OFF /ON

   +- SERIAL     Default Parser    = HP-GL             : HP-GL
                 File No.          = 0                 : 0 - 99
                 Baud Rate         = 9600              : 300 /1200 /2400 /4800 /9600 /19200
                 Data Bit          = 7_BITS            : 7_BITS /8_BITS
                 Stop Bit          = 1_BIT             : 1_BIT /2_BITS
                 Parity            = EVEN              : NONE /EVEN /ODD
                 Handshake         = XON/XOFF          : XON/XOFF /HARDWARE /ENQ_ACK /SOFTWARE
                 EOP Timeout       = ON                : OFF /ON
                   Timeout         = 10sec             : 0 - 255
                 Output Response   = NO                : NO /YES
                 Page Limit        = NO                : NO /YES

   SYSTEM PARAMETER
                 Print density     = 0                 : -99 - 99
                 Auto Roll
                   Roll->Tray      = OFF               : OFF /ON
                   Tray->Roll      = OFF               : OFF /ON
                 Paper Width
                   SPA1            = 620mm             : 620 /625
                   SPA2            = 440mm             : 435 /440
                 Smoothing         = OFF               : OFF /ON
                 Replot            = ON                : OFF /ON
                 Low power mode 1  = ON                : ON
                   Timer           = 15min             : 1 - 120
                 Low power mode 2  = ON                : ON
                   Timer           = 15min             : 5 - 120
                 Sleep mode        = ON                : OFF /ON
                   Timer           = 90min             : 15 - 120
                 Stamp Auto Load   = OFF               : OFF /ON
                 Attention Light
                   Lamp            = OFF               : OFF /ON
                   Buzzer          = OFF               : OFF /ON
                   Buzzer timer    = 0sec              : 0 /10 /30 /60 /120 /180
                 Job Recovery      = OFF               : OFF /QUEUED /ALL
                 Net Cont. Time    = 30min             : 10 /30 /60 /90 /120 /180 /240 /300 /360 /420 /480
```

Description of the Configuration List Contents

The contents of configuration list are explained below.

Displayed Item		Description
H/W CONFIG	Model	Product name
	Software Version	Installed version of the printer software
	RAM Total	Displays the amount of memory installed in the printer.
	Segment Memory	Displays the capacity of the area where spooled print data is stored during print processing.
	Work Memory	Displays the capacity of the area used for running the controller software.
	Frame Memory	Displays the capacity of the image memory (the area in which images developed into bit maps are stored.)
	Harddisk	Displays the model number of the hard disk on which the input data are spooled.
	Option H/W	Additional installed hardware device(s), such as a folder, stacker, etc.
	Finisher Model	Model number of the finisher
S/W CONFIG	PostScript	Enabled software option
	Network Scan	Disabled software option
	Key Install Key	Installation key number for the installed and enabled software option
PORT SETTING	ETHERNET	Ethernet settings
	TCP/IP	TCP/IP port settings
	SNMP	SNMP status
SYSTEM PARAMETER	All	The left column lists the available system parameters. The center column lists the current system parameter settings. The right column lists the possible settings for each of the system parameters.

8.8 Software Option

The [Software Option] selection on the Print Services on Web [Properties] tab displays all installed optional software and related Feature Key (Key Install Key) information, for example, for the PostScript Driver.

8.9 Change Password

The [Change Password] selection on the Print Services on Web [Properties] tab can be used to change the password that is used to log in to the Administrator page.

Important *Maintain a record of the new password in a secure location.*

1 Select the [Change Password] selection on the [Properties] tab.

The [Change Web administrator password] fields will display in the right pane of the window.
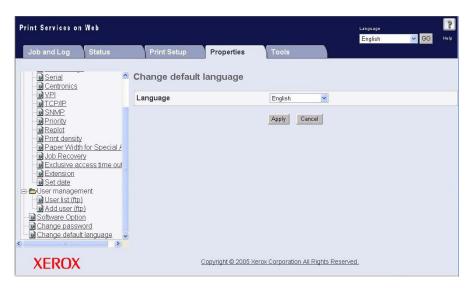
2 Enter the current password in the [Current password:] field.

3 Enter the new password in the [New password:] field.

4 Enter the new password again in the [Confirm New Password:] field.

5 Click the [Apply] button to save the change, or [Cancel] to undo it.

8.10 Change Default Language

The [Change default language] selection on the Print Services on Web [Properties] tab can be used to change the language that is displayed when Print Services on Web is started. The language can be changed to English, French, Italian, German, Spanish, or Portuguese.

This setting becomes effective after the machine is switched off and then on again.

1 Select the [Change default language] selection on the Print Services on Web [Properties] tab.

The [Change default language] fields will display on the right pane of the window.

2 Select the required language selection from the pull down list.

3 Click the [Apply] button to save the change, or [Cancel] to undo it.

4 Power the machine off and then on for the change to take effect.

Chapter 9

Logical Printer Setup and Operation

9.1 Creating a New Logical Printer

One hundred logical (virtual) printers, numbered from 00 to 99, can be set up for each of the available data formats (HP-GL, Versatec, TIFF, CALS, PS/PDF). The procedure below explains how to create a new logical printer.

1 Start the web browser and log in to Print Services on Web.

2 Enter the Administrator mode, and then select the [Print Setup] tab.
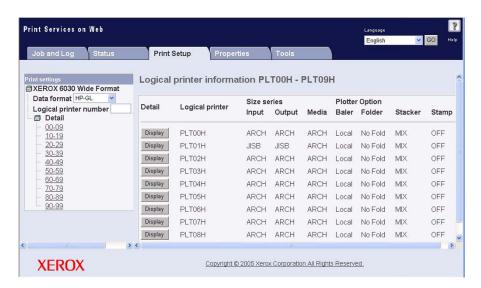
3 Select the data format for the new logical printer from the [Data format] menu. The selections include [Versatec], [HP-GL], [TIFF], [CALS], and optionally, [PS/PDF].

(Note)   *The logical printers are pre-configured in the factory to their default print settings. These defaults, as well as the options you can select, are defined in the upcoming section 9.2 Defining the Print Settings. When you display a list of logical printers, as in step 4, the current print settings will display.*
To identify a logical printer whose factory defaults have not been changed, look for one that displays only the factory defaults. As a clue to identifying logical printers that have been set up for local use, check the Media Series or User-Defined Size parameters. These parameters are often customized to meet local needs.

4 Select an unused logical printer. To do this, select a range of numbers in the [Detail] list at the left side of the screen, beginning with [00-09]. The ten logical printers will appear in the right pane of the screen.

5 Continue selecting the ranges of numbers, as required, until you locate an unused logical printer, and then click the [Display] button.

The default print settings for the selected data format and logical printer will display in the [Logical printer information...] list at the right side of the screen, and a menu of print setting selections will appear in the left pane.

(Note) *Use the scrollbar on the right side of the window to scroll through the [Logical printer information] list.*

(Note) *To print a list of the logical printer settings, scroll to the bottom of the [Logical printer information] list and click the [Print] button.*

6 If required, set up the print parameters following the instructions in section 9.2 Defining the Print Settings.

9.2 Defining the Print Settings

The next step, after creating a logical printer, is to set up the parameters that define how it will process print jobs. These parameters are located at the left side of the screen in the [Print Setup] menus ([Media setting], [Input setting], [Output setting], [Transform], [Pen setting], and [Command setting]).

1 Click an item in a [Print Setup] menu to display the available selections. The settings for the selected item will display on the right side of the screen.

2 Set up each of the print settings that needs to be changed. Refer to the parameter descriptions in this section for the available setting options.

3 Click the [Apply] button after selecting each parameter setting. You may have to scroll the screen to reveal the [Apply] button.

9.3 Logical Printer Print Settings

This section describes the print settings for the logical printers.

Logical Printer Parameters by Data Format

The logical printer parameters will vary by data format, as indicated in the table below.

HP-GL	Versatec	TIFF	CALS	PS/PDF
Media Series	Media Series	Media Series	Media Series	Media Series
Size/media Mapping	Size/media Mapping	Size/media Mapping	Size/media Mapping	Size/media Mapping
Media Source	Media Source	Media Source	Media Source	Media Source
Media Type	Media Type	Media Type	Media Type	Media Type
User-defined Size	User-defined Size	User-defined Size	User-defined Size	User-defined Size
Input Option	Input Option	Input Option	Input Option	Input Option
Input size margin	Input size margin	Input size margin	Input size margin	Input size margin
Plot Area	Plot Area	Plot Area	Plot Area	Plot Area
Plotter Option	Plotter Option	Plotter Option	Plotter Option	Plotter Option
Priority	Priority	Priority	Priority	Priority
Title block	Title block	Title block	Title block	Title block
Split Drawing	Split Drawing	Split Drawing	Split Drawing	Message Option
Message Option	Message Option	Message Option	Message Option	Printed Copy
Printed Copy	Printed Copy	Printed Copy	Printed Copy	Output Option
Output Option	Output Option	Output Option	Output Option	Size Recognition
Size Recognition	Size Recognition	Size Recognition	Size Recognition	PS/PDF Option
Color Option	Color Option	TIFF Option	CALS Option	Transform
Transform	Transform	Transform	Transform	
Define Single Pen	Pen Option			
Define Multi Pen	VCGL Pen Style			
Pen Option	VCGL Pen Width			
Emulation	VRF Define Pen			
PS Command	VRF Define Multi Pen			
EOP Command				

Parameters Common to all Data Formats

The following table lists the parameters that are common to all logical printers, regardless of data format.

[Print Setup] Menu	Menu Item	Description	Format
Media setting	Media Series	Specifies the media size series for the input and output data, and the media.	All
	Size/Media Mapping	Sets up the input size mapping, and whether to enable or disable the media mapping.	All

[Print Setup] Menu	Menu Item	Description	Format
Media setting (continued)	Media Source	Determines whether the paper is to be fed automatically from a roll or from the (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit, and sets up the priority ([Job] or [Controller]). **Important** *The optional (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit is required for manual feeding.*	All
	Media Type	Sets up the media type ([Any], [Bond], [Vellum], [Film]).	All
	User-Defined Size	Sets up the user defined size.	All
Input setting	Input Option	Sets up the input size and the number of fragments.	All
	Input Size Margin	Sets the top, bottom, left, and right margin values (from -99 to +99mm).	All
Output setting	Priority	Sets up the printing priority ([Low], [Normal], [High]).	All
	Title Block	Sets up the media size and the title block location on the print.	All
	Split Drawing	Sets up the printing parameters for Split Drawing Mode.	All
	Message Option	Determines whether messages will be printed. Selections include [Error Message], [Label Message], [Date Message], [Display Position].	All
	Printed Copy	Sets up the number of copies to be printed (1 to 99), and the priority ([Job] or [Controller]).	All
	Output Option	Sets up the output size. Also sets up number of fragments and the lead and trail margins.	All
	Size Recognition	Determines whether to give priority to standard shapes or to long shapes when the standard size is exceeded.	All
Transform	Transform	Sets automatic enlargement/reduction (Auto Scale), Mirror Image, and 90-degree rotation.	All

Parameters Unique to Data Formats

[Print Setup] Menu	Menu Item	Description	Data Format
Output setting	Plot Area	Sets the print range, centering, and offset.	All (see Note)
	Color Option	Enables or disables the White Mode (white line) function.	HPGL, Versatec
	TIFF Option	Sets up the sorting and output sequence, and the resolution for the print data.	TIFF
	CALS Option	Sets up whether or not to disable the [ROTATE] command.	CALS
	PS/PDF Option	Sets the default media size, tray, and DMS for PS/PDF data.	PS/PDF
Pen setting	Define Single Pen	Defines the attributes of a single pen.	HPGL
	Define Single Pen	Defines the attributes of a single pen for VRF data.	Versatec
	Define Multi Pen	Defines the attributes of multiple pens.	HPGL
	Define Multi Pen	Defines the attributes of multiple pens for VRF data.	Versatec
	VCGL Pen Width	Sets up the width of the VCGL pen only.	Versatec
	VCGL Pen Style	Sets up the pen specifications for VCGL data only.	Versatec
	Pen Option	Determines whether or not to change the pen width when enlarging or reducing.	Versatec, HPGL
Command setting	Emulation	Selects the processing language (HP-GL/HP-GL2) for the HP-GL data.	HPGL
	PS Command	Enables and disables the PS command.	HPGL
	EOP Command	Enables and disables the EOP command.	HPGL

Note   *Print ranges cannot be set up for TIFF and CALS.*

Media Series

This parameter sets up the media size series for the input size, output size, and media size. Each item can be set to a different media size series.

Settings

The settings are as follows. All of the default settings are [ISO A].

Menu Item	Description
Input size	Sets up the media group for determining the input size. The selections available are [ISO A series], [Special A series], [ARCH series], [ISO B series], [ANSI series], and [ARCH-30 series].
Output size	Sets up the media group for determining the output size. The selections available are [ISO A series], [Special A series], [ARCH series], [ISO B series], [ANSI series], and [ARCH-30 series]. (Note) *The settings specified with the host take priority.*
Media size	Sets up the media group for determining the roll media to be selected. The selections available are [ISO A series], [Special A series], [ARCH series], [ISO B series], [ANSI series], and [ARCH-30 series].

The media types that can be set for each paper group are shown below.

- Input size, Output size

MEDIA SERIES	Standard Size
ISO A	A0 to A4, U0 to U4, A0L to A4L
ISO B	Input size: B0 to B4, BU0 to BU4, B0L to B4L Output size: B1 to B4, BU1 to BU4, B1L to B4L
Special A	SA0 to SA3, SU0 to SU3, SA0L to SA3L,
ARCH	E to A, UE to UA, EL to AL
ANSI	E to A, UE to UA, EL to AL
ARCH-30	E30 to A, UE30 to UA, E30L to AL

- Media Size

MEDIA SERIES	Standard Size	User Defined Sizes	Roll Media
ISO A	A0 to A4	A0 to A4	A0 to A3
ISO B	B1 to B3	B1 to B3	B1 to B3
Special A	SA0 to SA3	SA0 to SA3	SA0 to SA3
ARCH	E to A	E to A	E to B
ANSI	E to A	E to A	E to B
ARCH-30	E30 to A	UE30 to UA	E30 to B

(Refer to) *Refer to 14.1 Main Specifications for details on the media sizes.*
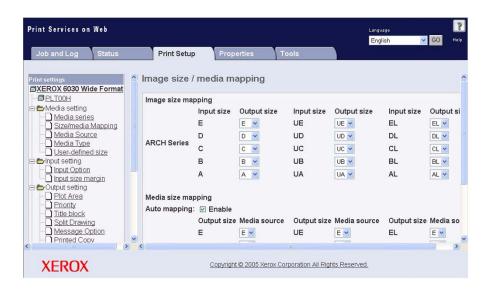
Size/Media Mapping

Standard size images and user-defined images can be enlarged and reduced to fit standard and user-defined output sizes. This is known as "Size Mapping".
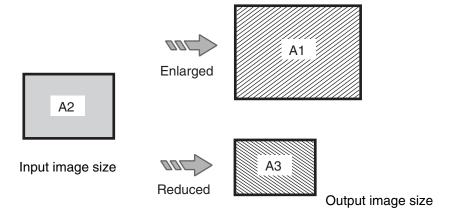
It is also possible to specify which roll media is to be used based on the output size. This function is known as "Media Mapping".

The function that automatically determines the output media size that best matches the size of the output image is known as "Auto Mapping".
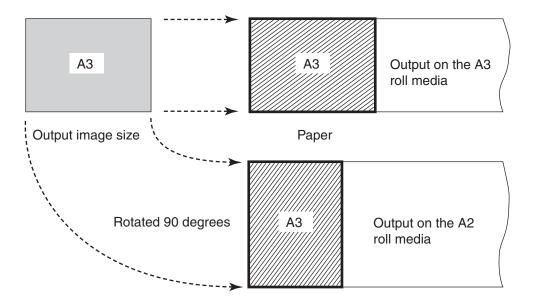
(Note)
- *These parameters are only valid when [AUTO], [OTHER], [MIX], or [MIX2] has been specified for the [Paper Size] on [Output Option].*
- *Images will not be enlarged or reduced if [Auto Scale] has been set to [NO]. Refer to the section on [Transform] for details on the [Auto Scale] function.*

Size Mapping

Media Mapping

Settings The settings for this function are as follows.

Menu Item	Description
Auto Mapping	Sets whether the automatic mapping functions is to be enabled or not. The output paper size that best matches the output image size will be determined automatically when this function is set to [Enable]. The values specified in paper mapping will be invalidated.
Size (fixed)	The value entered here is used as the input size when [Output] has been specified. The value entered here is used as the output size when [Media Type] has been specified. The paper size displayed will differ in accordance with the [Input size] parameter set for the Media series.
Output	Sets the size of the output image in relation to the input size (size mapping). The paper size selected will differ in accordance with the [Output size] parameter set for the Media series.
Paper	Sets the size of the paper that is to be actually output in relation to the output size when automatic mapping has been set to [NO] (media mapping). There are cases where the input image will be rotated for output purposes depending on the paper size specified here. The paper size selected will differ in accordance with the [Media size] parameter set for the Media series.

(Refer to) *Refer to the section on "Media Series" for further details on paper groups.*
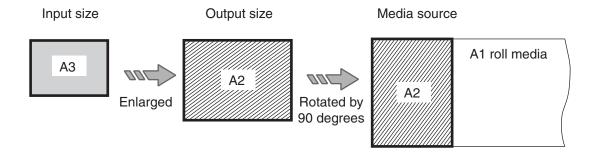
Example

When the mapping table is set up as shown below, an image with an input size of A3 will be printed as follows.

② Media Mapping

Input size	Output size	Media size
A0	A0	A0
A1	A1	A1
A2	A1	A1
A3	A2	A2
A4	A4	A4

① Size Mapping

① Size mapping is applied to the image with an input size of A3, which is then enlarged to an A2 output size (enlarged by 141.4%).

② Media mapping is applied as the output size is A2, and the image is printed on the A1 roll media (rotated by 90 degrees and output).

Input size   Output size   Media source

A3 →(Enlarged)→ A2 →(Rotated by 90 degrees)→ A2 / A1 roll media

Examples of the Media Sizes that can be output with Media Mapping

It is possible to print out the following paper sizes for the ISO A series.

Output Size	Printable Paper Size
A0	A0 roll media
A1	A0 roll media (90-degree rotation), A1 roll media
A2	A1 roll media (90-degree rotation), A2 roll media
A3	A2 roll media (90-degree rotation), A3 roll media
A4	A3 roll media (90-degree rotation)

(Note) • *It is possible to set paper sizes other than those listed above with media mapping, but this may result in the images breaking up or the paper being too large.*

Media Source

This setting determines whether the media will automatically feed from a roll or from the manual feed tray (cut sheet). The priority sequence when automatic selection is specified is [Roll1], [Roll2], [Roll3], and [Roll4], in that order.

Important *The optional (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit is required for manual feeding.*

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.

Menu Item	Description	
Media Source	[AUTO]	Automatically selects the appropriate media from the feed trays.
	[MANUAL]	Feeds from the manual feed tray.
	The default setting is [AUTO].	
Priority	[JOB]	The paper tray command in the print data takes priority.
	[Controller]	The setting made on the printer control panel takes priority.
	The default settings is [JOB].	

Media Type

Determines the default media type selection for printing. This setting is valid when a different type of media of the same size is loaded in the printer. [ANY] is set for this under normal circumstances.

(Note) *When the media type specification command is already set up in the job data from the host, the host command has priority.*

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.

Menu Item	Description
Media Type	Selects the media for printing. The available selections include [ANY], [BOND], [VELLUM], and [FILM]. The default setting is [ANY].

User-Defined Size

The user-defined sizes are used for printing long images and non-standard size media. User-defined sizes can be specified for each standard size. It is possible to uniformly output all images that exceed the standard sizes but are within the specified user-defined sizes.

(Note) *The user-defined sizes are only valid when the [Paper Size] selection on [Output Option] is set to [AUTO].*

Settings The settings for this function are as follows.

Menu Item	Description
Media Name (fixed)	The name of the media with the user-defined size. The media name will differ based on the [Input size] parameter which is set up for the Media series. Refer to the table on the following page.
Length	Sets up the length of the user-defined media. Refer to the table on the following page for the range in which the sizes can be set.

(Refer to) *Refer to the section on "Media Series" for further details on paper groups.*

Input Option

Sets up the input image size. Two judgment methods are available for input image size.
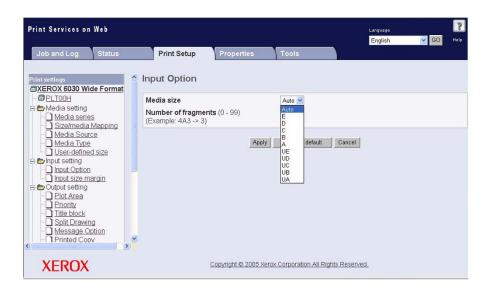
- Automatic (AUTO)

Calculates the coordinates of the input image and automatically determines the nearest media size.

- Specify Size

Enables the user to manually select the media size of the input image. The media size can be selected from standard sizes and user-defined sizes.

This option is usually set to [AUTO]. However, the media size can be specified manually if the size of the print is to be restricted to a fixed size. Any part of the image that exceeds the size of the specified media will be cut off.
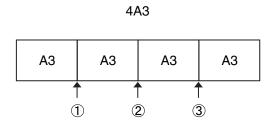
Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.

Menu Item	Description
Media Size	This parameter can be selected from either [AUTO] or one of the listed media sizes. The default setting is [AUTO]. The media size selections will differ based on the [Input size] parameter that is set up for the Media series.
Number of Fragments	Sets up the number of copies to be printed consecutively in a range from 0 to 99 when [Size] has been set to [AUTO]. The default setting is [1]. A value that subtracts 1 from the length of the standard size will be set for [Connect]. For example, in the event of 4A3, 3 will be set for the [Connect].

(Refer to) *Refer to the section on "Media Series" for further details on paper groups.*

4A3

A3	A3	A3	A3

① ② ③
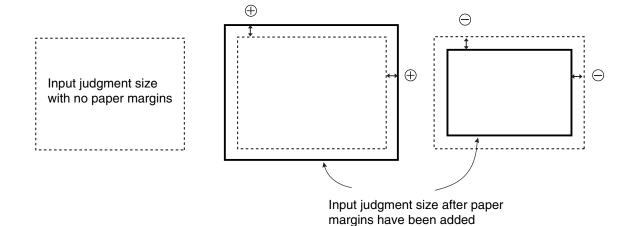
Connect = 3

Input Size Margin

Specifies the top, bottom, left, and right margin settings for determining input sizes. Plus (+) values represent margins outside of the media size, and minus (–) values represent margins inside the media size. The size that includes (excludes) these margins is established as the input judgment size.

(Note)   *These settings are only valid when the [Input Options] - [Size] parameter is set to [AUTO].*

Input judgment size with no paper margins

Input judgment size after paper margins have been added

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.
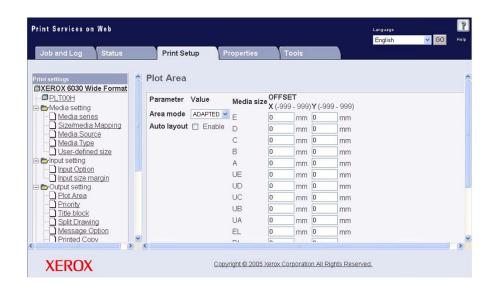
Menu Item	Description
X	Sets the left and right margin values within a range of –99 to 99 mm. The default settings is [5 mm].
Y	Sets the lead and trail margin values within a range of –99 to 99 mm. The default settings is [5 mm].
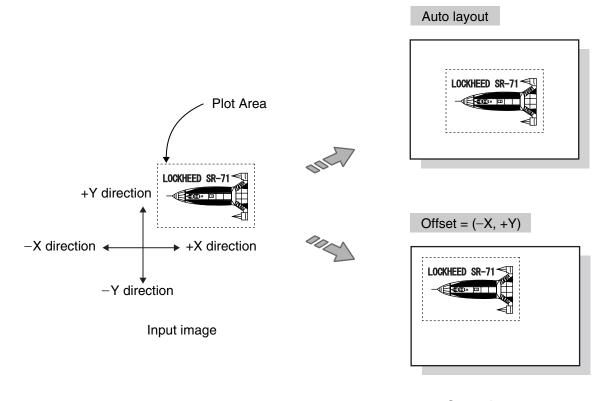
Example

The media margin settings are determined according to the following for input data consisting of 300 x 420 mm.

MEDIA MARGIN	Input Judgment Size	Description
When both X and Y have been set to +10 mm	A3: 307×430 mm A2: 430×604 mm	Because the input data is smaller than A3, the A3 size is determined. When printing is performed on A3 media (297×420), 3 mm of data width will be cut.
When both X and Y have been set to –10 mm	A3: 287×410 mm A2: 410×584 mm	Because the input data is larger than A3, the A2 size is determined. When printing is performed on A2 paper (420×594), a margin will be located at the top, bottom, left and right.

Plot Area

Enables the print range (the plot area) to be specified based on the input image information. The plot area can be set up so that the image prints in the center of the media (Auto Layout) or is offset (Set Offset Value). If part of the image overlaps the margin when offset is specified, it will be cut off.

Auto layout

Plot Area

+Y direction

−X direction ⟷ +X direction

−Y direction

Input image

Offset = (−X, +Y)

Output image

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.

(Note) *The plot area cannot be set up for TIFF and CALS data. Only the auto layout function can be set for them.*

Menu Item	Description
Area Mode	Sets the range to be printed at [ADAPTED], [FIXED], [IP], [IW], [RASTER], or [FIRST]. The default setting is [ADAPTED]. See the next page for more details. (Note) •[IP] and [IW] can be set for HP-GL data only. •[RASTER] can only be set for HPGL data if the [PS COMMAND] has been set to [Ignore]. •The PS command takes priority if [Ignore] has not been set.
Auto Layout	Sets up the centering function. The default setting is [ENABLE]. [ENABLE] Centers the image. [DISABLE] Does not center the image.

When [DISABLE] is selected for [Auto Layout], specify the desired offset value for the media size to be used.

Menu Item	Description
Media size (fixed)	The media size for determining the position of the offset. The media size displayed will differ in accordance with the [Output Size] setting in [Media Series].
OFFSET X	Sets the amount of offset to the right and left. The offset value can be set within a range of –999 to 999 mm.
OFFSET Y	Sets the amount of offset up and down. The offset value can be set within a range of –999 to 999 mm.

(Refer to) *Refer to the section on "Media Series" for further details on paper groups.*

For example, if the following settings have been made, an image with an A2 output size will be printed with an offset of 20 mm in the X direction and 10 mm in the Y direction.

Size	OFFSET	
	X (–999 to 999)	Y (–999 to 999)
A0	0 mm	0 mm
A1	–10 mm	10 mm
A2	20 mm	10 mm
A3	0 mm	0 mm
A4	0 mm	0 mm

Descriptions of Area Mode

The area modes are described below.

ADAPTED	The data range of the input image is set as the print range (see Fig.1).
FIXED (HP-GL)	The range that encloses the maximum coordinate of the input image and the coordinates that represent the starting point of that coordinate is set as the print range.
FIXED (HP-GL/2)	The range that encloses the maximum coordinate of the input image and a starting point of (0,0) is set as the print range (see Fig.2).
IP AREA	The range specified with the [IP Command] is set as the print range (see Fig.3).
IW AREA	The range specified with the [IW Command] is set as the print range (see Fig.3).
RASTER	The range that corresponds with the input size specified with the [Destination Raster] command is set as the print range.
FIRST	Only the first quadrant area is set as the print area (see Fig.4). Images located in areas outside of the first quadrant area will not be printed (see Fig.5).

Fig.1. (ADAPTED)
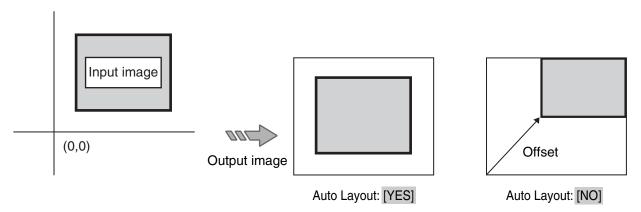
Fig.2. (FIXED)

Fig.3. (IP AREA and IW AREA)

The area specified with the
[IP Command] or [IW Command].

Input image

(0,0)

Output image

Auto Layout: [YES]

Offset

Auto Layout: [NO]

Fig.4. (FIRST)

FX

(0,0)

Output image

EX

Auto Layout: [YES]

EX

Offset
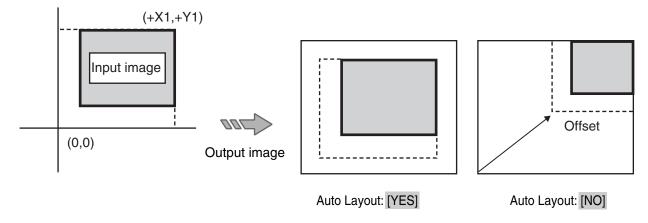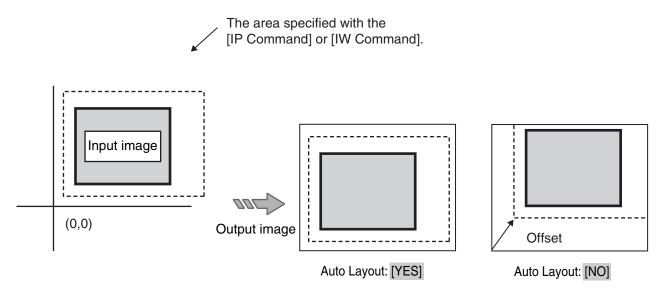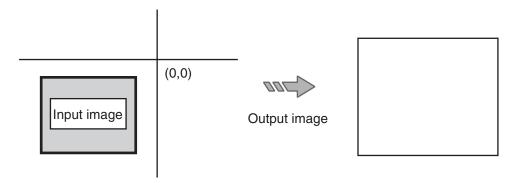
Auto Layout: [NO]

Fig.5. (FIRST)

(0,0)

Input image

Output image

Priority

Sets up the printing priority. This function increases the priority of a job to print it out sooner when the job queue is congested.

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.
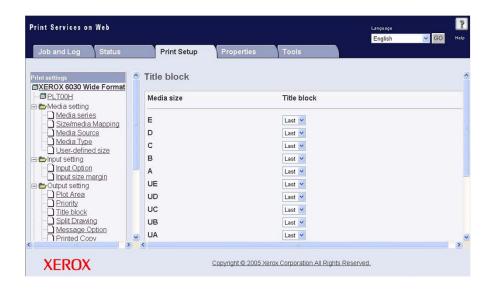
Menu Item	Description
PRIORITY	Sets one of the following as the printing priority. The default setting is [NORMAL]. [LOW] Low printing priority [NORMAL] Normal (standard) printing priority [HIGH] High printing priority

Title Block

The setting determines whether or not to rotate images 180 degrees. This setting is used to change the image orientation to ensure correct folding.

Settings

The available settings are as follows.
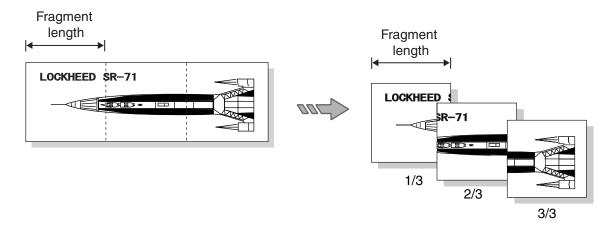
Menu Item	Description
Media Size	Determines whether or not to rotate images for each media size. Displays the media sizes that are selected in [Output size] under [Media series].
Title Block	The setting determines whether or not images will be rotated. The default setting is [Last]. [Last] Does not rotate images. [First] Rotates images 180 degrees.

Split Drawing

When an image exceeds 1,189mm in length, it can be split (fragmented) and printed in sections. This function also enables you to add positioning marks on each split section. A maximum of 30 such sections is possible.
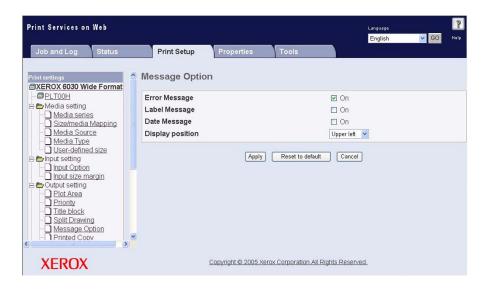
Settings   The settings for Split Drawing are as follows.
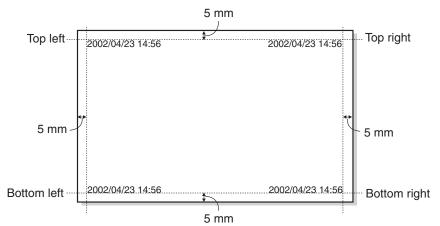
Item	Description
Split drawing mode	Set to either [Do not split] or [Split]. The default setting is [Do not split].
Split length	Sets the print length within a range of 1,189 to 3,000 mm. The default settings is [1,189 mm].
Page number printing	Determines whether or not a page number will be printed. The page number will be printed in the format [present page number:total number of pages]. The default setting is [Off].

Item	Description
Page margin	Determines whether or not the page margin will be present, and sets the margin where the pages are joined within a range of 0 to 90 mm. The default settings is [0 mm].
Alignment mark printing	Determines whether or not to print positioning marks. The default setting is [OFF].

Message Option

Determines whether or not to print error messages, label messages, and date messages on the print. The size of the characters used in the messages is fixed at a height of 2 mm regardless of the enlargement or reduction.

Settings

The settings are as follows.

Menu Item	Description
Error Message	Determines whether or not to print error messages. The default setting is [ON].
Label Message	Determines whether or not to print label messages. The default setting is [OFF].

Menu Item	Description
Date Message	Determines whether or not to print date messages. The default setting is [OFF]. The date format is [Year/Month/Day Hour:Minutes]. Example: [2006/01/02 14:56]
Display Position	Sets up the location where the message(s) will be printed. [Upper left]　Prints the message(s) at the top left-hand corner of the page. [Lower right]　Prints the message(s) at the bottom right corner of the page. [Lower left]　Prints the message(s) at the bottom left corner of the page. [Upper right]　Prints the message(s) at the top right corner of the page. The default setting is [Upper left].

Printed Copy

Sets up the default number of copies to be printed.

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.

(Note)   *The [Priority] parameter can only be set for Versatec data.*

Menu Item	Description
Printed Copy	Sets up the number of copies to be printed, in a range from 1 to 99. The default setting is [1].
Priority	[JOB] The copy count command in the job data takes priority. [Controller] The setting made on the printer control panel takes priority. The default setting is [JOB].

Output Option

Sets up the output size. The following two judgment methods are available for output image size.

- ● Automatic (AUTO, OTHER, MIX, MIX2)

Determines the most suitable output size based on the input size and the size mapping table. It also determines the roll media size to use based on the output size and the media mapping table (or automatically.)

- ● Specify Size

Enables the media size of the input image to be entered directly. The media size can be selected from standard sizes and user-defined sizes.

This is usually set to [AUTO]. However, it is possible to specify the media size if the same size will be used for all jobs.

The image will be enlarged or reduced if the input size and output media size are different.

(Note) *The image will not be enlarged or reduced if the [Auto Scale] selection has been set to [NO] for the [Transform] function.*

(Refer to) *Refer to "Size/Media Mapping" for more information about size and media mapping.*

Settings   The settings for this function are as follows.
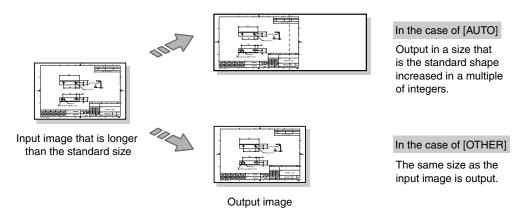
Menu Item	Description
Media Size	This parameter can be selected from [AUTO], [OTHER], [MIX], [MIX2], or any of the standard media sizes. The default setting is [AUTO].

	[AUTO]	The standard shape priority mode. If the length of the document exceeds the standard size, the media is cut to the standard shape that has been increased in length.
	[OTHER]	Synchronized cutting is performed on all images.
	[MIX]	If images that are smaller than the A0 size exceed the standard size, the media is cut to the standard size that has been increased in length. Synchronized cutting is performed on all images that exceed the A0 size.
	[MIX2]	If images that are smaller than the A0 size exceed the standard size, synchronized cutting is performed on all images.

The selection items for the media size will differ in accordance with the [Input size] parameter set for the Media series.

(Note) • *Synchronized cutting is where the media is cut to the non-standard size that matches the length of the image.*
• *All printing is carried out on roll media when [OTHER] has been selected.*
• *Refer to the section on "Media Series" for further details on paper size series.*
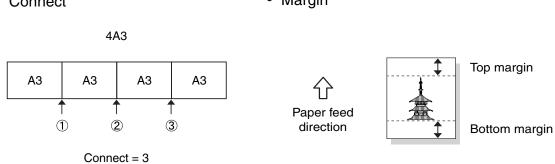
Menu Item	Description
Number of Fragments	Sets the number of copies to be printed consecutively in a range from 0 to 99 when [Paper Size] has been specified. The default setting is [0]. A value that subtracts 1 from the length of the standard size will be set for [Connect]. For example, in the event of 4A3, 3 will be set for the [Connect].
Lead and Trail Margins	Specifies whether or not margins will be added. The default setting is [No]. [NO] No margins will be added. [ALL] Top and bottom margins will be added to all data. [LONG] Top and bottom margins will be added to long images.
Lead Margin	Sets the top margin in a range from 0 to 999 mm when the [Margin] parameter is set to [ALL] or [LONG].
Trail Margin	Sets the bottom margin in a range from 0 to 999 mm when the [Margin] parameter is set to [ALL] or [LONG].

- Media Size

Input image that is longer than the standard size

Output image

- Connect

4A3

A3	A3	A3	A3

① ② ③

Connect = 3

- Margin

Paper feed direction

Top margin

Bottom margin

Size Recognition
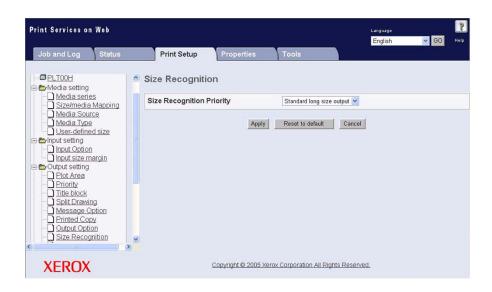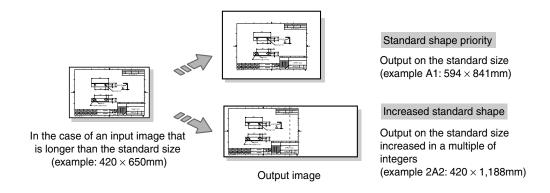
Size recognition determines whether images that are less that an A0 size in length (1,189 mm), but that are larger than a standard size, will be printed on media that is one size larger, or on standard size that has been increased in length.

This setting is useful when all images will be printed on the same standard size media or on a standard size that has been increased in length.

Note   *This setting is only valid when the [Paper Size] selection for [Output Option] is set to [MIX].*

In the case of an input image that is longer than the standard size (example: 420 × 650mm)

Output image

Standard shape priority

Output on the standard size (example A1: 594 × 841mm)

Increased standard shape

Output on the standard size increased in a multiple of integers (example 2A2: 420 × 1,188mm)

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.

Menu Item	Description	
Size Recognition	Sets up the size recognition priority mode. The default value is [Standard long size output].	
	[Standard long size output]	Outputs images that are within the A0 size, but exceed the standard size, on one size larger standard shape paper.
	[Priority to standard size]	Prints images that are within the A0 size, but exceed the standard size, on standard width media that has been increased in length.

Color Option

Sets the pen drawing color at a specified density or at black when a color command other than black is specified.

(Note)   *This setting is only valid for HP-GL and Versatec data.*

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.
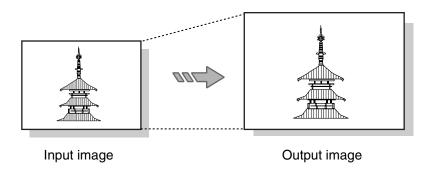
Menu Item	Description
White Mode	Determines how lines will be drawn when the image information specifies a color other than black. [ENABLE] Draws lines with pens of varying densities that correspond to the specified colors. Can draw visible lines on a black background. [DISABLE] Draws all lines with the black pen. Lines are not visible when they are drawn on a black background. The default setting is [ON] for HP-GL; [OFF] for Versatec.

Transform
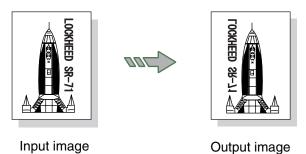
Enables or disables the auto scale (automatic enlargement/reduction), mirror image, and 90-degree rotation functions.

Auto Scale

Input image   Output image

Mirror Image

Input image   Output image
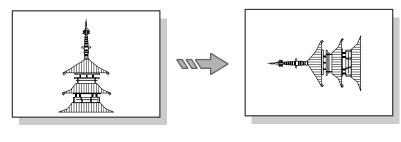
90-degree Rotation

Input image   Output image

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.

Menu Item	Description
Auto Scale	Determines whether or not to automatically enlarge or reduce sizes when the input size and output size are different. The default setting is [ENABLE]. [ENABLE] Automatically enlarges or reduces the size of the image to match the output size. [DISABLE] Outputs the image at the same size regardless of the output size. (Note) *The image will be output at the same size, even when enlargement/reduction has been set for size mapping with [Auto Scale] to [OFF].*
Mirror Image	Determines whether or not to perform mirror image processing on the output image. The default setting is [DISABLE]. [ENABLE] Performs mirror image processing of the output. [DISABLE] Outputs the image without mirror image processing. (Note) *The settings specified at the host take priority.*
90-degree rotation	Determines whether or not the output image will be rotated by 90 degrees. This setting is used when rotation has been specified manually. The default setting is [DISABLE]. [ENABLE] Rotates the output image by 90 degrees. [DISABLE] Outputs the image in the normal manner. (Note) *This setting is only valid when the [Media Size] parameter of [Input Option] is set to anything other than [Auto].*

Define Single Pen
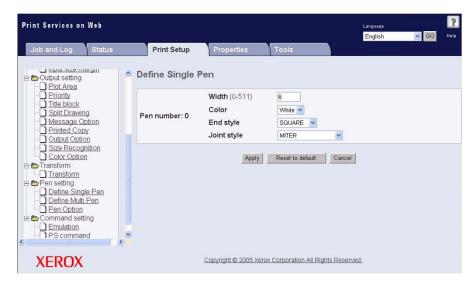
Defines the width, color, end style, and joint style pen attributes for HP-GL data.

Click the [Change] button to edit the attributes of a pen.

The screen below will display.

Click [Apply] to save your changes.

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.
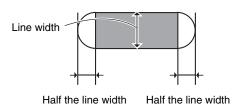
Menu Item	Description
Pen No.	Sets up the pen number, in a range from 0 to 98.
Width	Sets the line width in a range from 0 to 511, where a setting of 1 = 0.0635 mm. The actual width of the line will be n × 0.0635, with the line width set to n. The default setting is [2]. **Important** *Lines may be printed in patches if the width is set to [1].*
Color	Sets the line color to [BLACK] or [WHITE]. The default setting is [BLACK].
End style	Sets the end of the line to [SQUARE], [ROUND], [EXTEND], or [TRIANGLE]. The default setting is [SQUARE]. Refer to the illustrations on the next page for more details.
Joint style	Sets joint processing for lines to [UNJOINT], [BEVEL], [MITER], [ROUND], [TRIANGLE], or [MITERED/BEVELED]. The default setting is [MITER]. Refer to the illustrations on the next page for more details. **Note** *This setting is only valid for HP-GL and HP-GL/2 EA, EP, ER, FP, RA, RR, and PE.*

End style
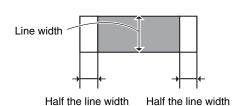
SQUARE

The normal method for ending lines.
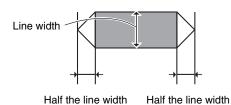
ROUND

Rounds off both ends of the line with a half radius of the line width.

Line width

Half the line width   Half the line width

EXTEND
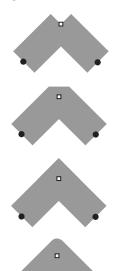
Extends both ends by half the line width.

Line width

Half the line width   Half the line width

TRIANGLE

Adds a triangle that is half of the line width in length to both ends of the line.

Line width

Half the line width   Half the line width

Joint style

UNJOINT

Does not join the lines.

BEVEL

Joins the outside corner of one line to the outside corner of the other line.

MITER

Extends the outside corners of both lines until they meet in a miter.

ROUND

Rounds off the area where the two lines meet.

TRIANGLE

Extends the joint by half the line width, and connects the top and outer edges of both lines.

MITERED/BEVELED

Extends the joint by the length calculated from the line width and Miter Limit, and connects the top.

Define Multi Pen

Sets up the line width, color, end style, and joint style pen attributes for HP-GL data for multiple pens. The same parameters will be set for all other pen numbers within the specified range.

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.

Menu Item	Description
Pen No.	Specifies the starting number and the ending number that cover the range of pens that are to be set up. The pen numbers are set within a range of 0 to 98.
Width	Sets the line width within a range of 0 to 511, where a line width of 1 = 0.0635 mm. The actual width of the line will be n × 0.0635, with the line width set to n. The default setting is [2]. **Important** *Text may not print cleanly if the line width is set to [1].*
Color	Sets the line color at [BLACK] or [WHITE]. The default setting is [BLACK].
End style	Sets the end of the line to [SQUARE], [ROUND], [EXTEND] or [TRIANGLE]. The default setting is [SQUARE]. Refer to "End style" for further details.
Joint style	Sets joint processing for lines to [MITER], [ROUND], [UNJOINT], [BEVEL], [TRIANGLE], or [MITERED/BEVELED]. The default setting is [MITER]. Refer to "Joint style" for further details. **Note** *This setting is only valid for HP-GL and HP-GL/2 EA, EP, ER, FP, RA, RR and PE.*

Pen Option

Determines whether or not to change the ratio of the pen thickness based on the enlargement/reduction ratio.

(Note)   *This setting is valid for HP-GL data and Versatec data only.*

Settings

The setting for this function is as follows.

Menu Item	Description	
Enlarge/reduce pen width	[ENABLE]	Changes the pen width based on the enlargement/reduction ratio.
	[DISABLE]	The pen width remains unchanged. The default setting is [DISABLE].

Emulation

Selects the processing language for the HP-GL format only.

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.

Menu Item	Description
Emulation	Sets the processing language at either [HP-GL] or [HP-GL/2]. The default setting is [HP-GL].

PS Command

Enables or disables the PS command.

Note *These settings are valid with HP-GL data only.*

Settings

The available settings are as follows.

Menu Item	Description
PS command	[DO NOT IGNORE] Enables the PS command. [IGNORE] Disables the PS command. The default setting is [DO NOT IGNORE].

EOP Command

Enables and disables the EOP command for HP-GL data only.

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows. The default value for all parameters is [Enable].

Menu Item	Description
SP:Pen0	Enables or disables the SP:Pen0 command.
PG:Adv Page	Enables or disables the Adv Page command.
NR:	Enables or disables the NR command.
FR:	Enables or disables the FR command.
AF:	Enables or disables the AF command.
AH:	Enables or disables the AH command.

VCGL Pen Style (VCGL Define Pen)

Sets up the pen specifications for VCGL data only.

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.
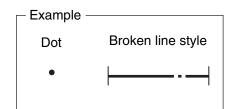
Menu Item	Description
Joint style	Sets up the joint processing for lines to [UNJOINT], [BEVEL], [MITER], or [ROUND]. The default setting is [UNJOINT]. Refer to "Joint style" for further details. (Note) *This setting is only valid when printing poly-lines, polygons and rectangles.*
End style	Sets the end of the line to [SQUARE], [ROUND], [EXTEND], or [TRIANGLE]. The default setting is [SQUARE]. Refer to "End style" for further details.
Dashed line style	Sets broken line processing to [WRAP] or [NO WRAP]. The default setting is [NO WRAP].

Dashstyle

Dot   Broken line style

NO WRAP

Each dot represents the start of the broken line.
Lines printed with the use of the broken line style shown in
the example will be printed as a non-broken line, as shown
in the illustration on the left. This is due to the fact that the
dot appears before the line is broken, and this constitutes the
starting point for printing another line.

WRAP

Each dot represents the direction in which the broken line
must be printed.
Lines printed with the use of the broken line style shown in
the example will be printed as shown in the illustration at
the left.

VCGL Pen Width

Sets up the width of the VCGL pen only.

Settings

The setting for this function is as follows.
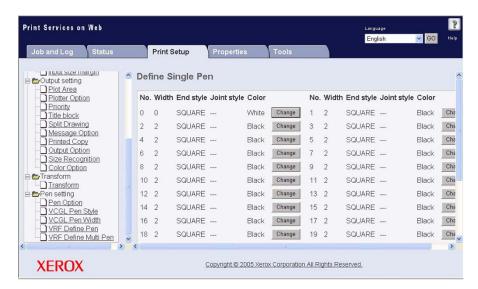
Menu Item	Description
Width	Sets the line width in a range from 0 to 511. 1 = 0.0635 mm. The actual width of the line will be n × 0.0635, with the line width set to n. The default setting is [2]. **Important** *Text may not print clearly if the line width is set to [1].*
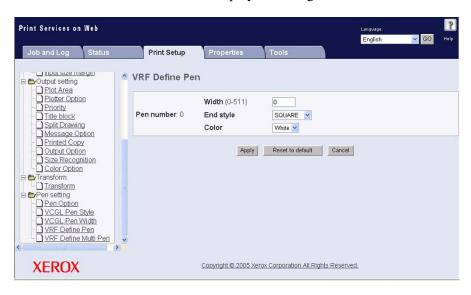
VRF Define Pen (Define Single Pen)

Sets the pen attributes for VRF data only.

Click the [Change] button to define the attributes for a pen.

The VRF Define Pen menus will display on the right side of the screen.

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.

Menu Item	Description
No.	Sets the pen number within a range of 0 to 31.
Width	Sets the line width in a range from 0 to 511. 1 = 0.0635 mm. The actual width of the line will be n × 0.0635, with the line width set to n. The default setting is [2]. **Important** *Text may not print clearly if the line width is set to [1].*

Menu Item	Description
End style	Sets the end of the line to [SQUARE], [ROUND], [EXTEND], or [TRIANGLE]. The default setting is [SQUARE]. Refer to "End style" for further details.
Color	Sets the line color to [BLACK] or [WHITE]. The default setting is [BLACK].

(Note) *Although it is also possible to set the [Width] from Print Services on Web, the width data included in the VRF data take priority, and any changes on the Print Services on Web screen will have no effect on the output.*

VRF Define Multi Pen

Sets the pen attributes for multiple pens for VRF data only. The same parameters will be set for all other pen numbers within the specification range.

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.

Menu Item	Description
Pen No.	Specifies the starting number and ending number that cover the range of the pens that are to be set up. The pen numbers are set within a range of 0 to 31.
Width	Sets the line width in a range from 0 to 511. 1 = 0.0635 mm. The actual width of the line will be n × 0.0635, with the line width set to n. The default setting is [2]. **Important** *Text may not print clearly if the line width is set to [1].*
End style	Sets the end of the line to [SQUARE], [ROUND], [EXTEND], or [TRIANGLE]. The default setting is [SQUARE]. Refer to "End style" for further details.
Color	Sets the line color at [BLACK] or [WHITE]. The default setting is [BLACK].

(Note) *Although it is also possible to set the [Width] from Print Services on Web, the width data included in the VRF data take priority, and any changes on the Print Services on Web screen will have no effect on the output.*

TIFF Option

Sets up the sorting and output sequence, and the resolution priority for TIFF data.

(Note)   *These settings are only valid with TIFF data.*

Settings

The settings for this function are as follows.

Menu Item	Description
Sort mode	Determines whether or not to sort the output data. The default setting is [DISABLE]. [ENABLE] Sorted. [DISABLE] Not sorted.
Last to first	Determines whether or not to print in the reverse order. The default setting is [DISABLE]. [ENABLE] Prints in the reverse order. [DISABLE] Prints in the normal order.
Resolution priority	Sets the resolution priority. The default settings is [JOB]. [JOB] Uses the resolution embedded in the TIFF data. [CONTROLLER]Uses the resolution set here.
Controller Resolution	Sets the resolution within a range of 30 to 3000 (dpi) when the [CONTROLLER] parameter has been specified.

CALS Option

Determines whether to enable or disable the [Rotate] command for CALS data only.

Settings   The settings for this function are as follows.

Menu Item	Description	
Specify Output Direction	[ENABLE]	Enables the [Rotate] command.
	[DISABLE]	Disables the [Rotate] command.
	The default setting is [DISABLE].	

PS/PDF Option

The available selections set up the default media size, roll, and DMS for PS/PDF data.

Settings   The settings for this function are as follows.

Menu Item	Description
Default Media Size	If media size information is not included in the print data, and no media is loaded in any trays, the page size of the data will be the selected media size. The default setting is [ISO_A0].
Default Media Source	If media size information is not included in the print data, the page size of the data will be the selected media size. The default setting is [ROLL 1].
Default DMS	If a DMS is not specified in the print data, the page size of the data will be the media size specified on the logical printer. The available settings are [ENABLE] and [DISABLE]. The default setting is [DISABLE].
Plot Area	This selection sets up the printable area. The default setting is [Normal]. [Normal] Adds 4 mm margins to the top, bottom, left, and right sides of the media. Print data is placed inside the margins. [Extend] No margins are added. Images will be printed to the edge of the page.
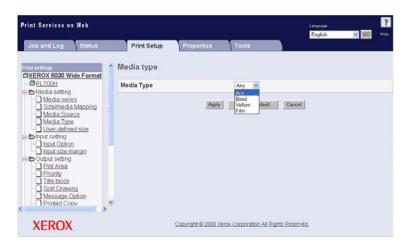
9.4 Logical Printer Operations

This section explains the procedures for performing the following using Print Services on Web.

- Selecting the Media Type
- Using Media Other Than the Default Series
- Changing Output Roll Media for an Entire Job
- Reduction and Enlargement Using Size Mapping
- Printing Long Documents
- Print Services on Web: Job and Log

Selecting the Media Type

The media type for the logical printers is set up using the [Media Type] selection. The available selections include [Any], [Bond], [Vellum], and [Film].

[Any] typically is selected as the media type. Specify the media type manually if the media is limited to a particular type. If a media other than the specified type is loaded after this setting is made, a [No Paper] error will be triggered.

(Refer to) *Refer to 9.3 Logical Printer Print Settings for details.*

Using Media Other Than the Default Series

The media size series is set up using the [Media series] selection. The available selections include [ISO A series], [ISO B series], [SP. A series], [ARCH series], [ANSI series], and [ARCH-30 series].

The [Input size], [Output size], and [Media size] parameters can be set up individually for each media group.

- [Input size] is the group used when judging the input size.
- [Output size] is the group used when judging the output size.
- [Media size] is the group used when deciding on the media that is to be used for printing.

Be sure that the groups are set up correctly. For example, if ISO A series paper is set for [Media size], but ANSI paper is loaded in the printer, the printer will be unable to recognize the paper type and a [No Paper] error will be triggered.

(Refer to)
- *Refer to the "Media Series" section of 9.3 Logical Printer Print Settings for details on available functions.*
- *Refer to 14.1 Main Specifications for details on the media sizes for each media group.*

Changing Output Roll Media for an Entire Job

By setting the [Output Option] [Size] selection to [AUTO], the output media is determined by the settings in the logical printer's [Media mapping] table. If a media mapping table is prepared for each job, the output roll media can be changed for each job.

For example, if an A1 roll and an A2 roll are loaded in the machine, and the A2 roll is to be used for printing the A2 size (Job1) job, and the A1 roll media to be used for printing (Job2), which is also in A2 size, the mapping table is set up as follows.

[PLT01H] logical printer settings
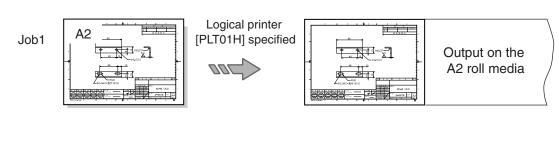
Image Size	Media Size
A0	A0
A1	A1
A2	A2
A3	A3
A4	A4

[PLT02H] logical printer settings
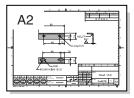
Image Size	Media Size
A0	A0
A1	A1
A2	A1
A3	A3
A4	A3

In this example, (Job1) is specified to use logical printer [PLT01H], which will output the job on the A2 roll media.

(Job2) is specified to use logical printer [PLT02H] and rotate the job 90 degrees to print on the A1 roll media.
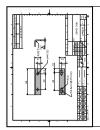
Reduction and Enlargement Using Size Mapping
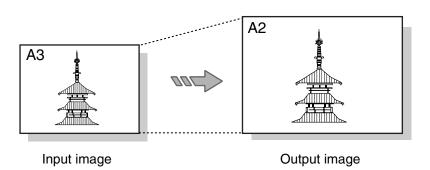
Reduction and enlargement can be performed using the size mapping table. The size mapping table establishes relationships between input image sizes and output image sizes. It enables users to enlarge or reduce prints automatically.

The size mapping table is set up using the logical printer's [Size/media mapping] selection. [Auto scale] is set to [Enable] and [Media size] (on [Output Option]) is set to automatic ([AUTO], [OTHER], [MIX], or [MIX2]).

If the size mapping table is set up as shown below, an image with an input size of A3 will be enlarged to an A2 size (141.4%).

[PLT01H] logical printer settings

Input Size	Output Size
A0	A0
A1	A1
A2	A2
A3	A2
A4	A4

A3   A2

Input image   Output image

In addition, if the output media size is directly specified with [Output Option] and [Auto scale] is set to [Enable], it is possible to enlarge or reduce the image so that it matches the size of the output media when the input size and output size are different.

Printing Long Documents

The media cut mode can be set to either the standard A0 format (1,189 mm), the standard shape increased in length, or the synchronized cut.
This parameter is set up using the logical printer [Output Option] feature.
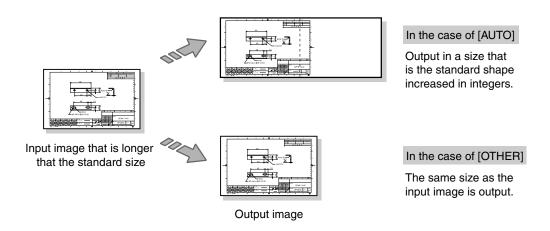
[AUTO]   : The standard shape priority mode. If the length of the document exceeds the standard size, the paper is cut to the standard shape that has been increased in length.

[OTHER] : Synchronized cuts performed on all images.

[MIX]   : If images that are smaller than the A0 size exceed the standard size, the paper is cut to the standard size that has been increased in length. Synchronized cuts are performed on all images that exceed the A0 size.

[MIX2]   : If images that are smaller than the A0 size exceed the standard size, synchronized cuts are performed on all images.

Input image that is longer that the standard size

Output image

In the case of [AUTO]

Output in a size that is the standard shape increased in integers.

In the case of [OTHER]

The same size as the input image is output.

(Note)   • *Synchronized cutting is when the length of the print is cut to the non-standard size that matches the length of the image.*
         • *All output is carried out on roll media when [OTHER] has been selected. Cut sheet cannot be used.*

9.5 Print Services on Web: Job and Log

The Print Services on Web [Job and Log] tab enables the user to perform the following.

- Display the Print Queue
- Cancel and Change the Priority of Jobs
- Manage the Job and Error Logs

(Refer to) • *The Print Services on Web [Help] function provides step-by-step instructions for performing many of the tasks described below. It also lists and describes the items and fields that appear on the screens. To access [Help], click the [?] button in the upper, right corner of the screen.*

Display the Print Queue

Perform the procedure below to display a list of the jobs that are currently printing and in the print queue.

Procedure

1 Start Print Services on Web and display the [Job and Log] tab on either the User Page or the Administrator Page.

2 Select [Job not completed].

A list of print jobs will display on the right side of the window. If the Administrator page is displayed, the jobs that are waiting to print will display a [Change] link at the right side. A job that is printing can not be changed, that is, it can not be canceled or be assigned a different priority.

3 To view the print queue for one logical printer only, select the appropriate data format in the [Logical printer] menu, enter the logical printer's number in the [Logical printer number] field, and then click an [Update] button.

A list of jobs for the specified logical printer will display.

Items Displayed in the [Jobs not completed] List

The items in the [Jobs not completed] list are defined below.

Displayed Item	Description
Job ID	Displays the assigned job ID.
Owner	Displays the name of the job owner.
Status	Displays the current job status. [Receiving] Job queuing in progress. [Queued] On standby for job processing. [Printing] Printing in progress.
Priority	Displays [High], [Normal] or [Low] as the priority.
Document Name	Displays the name of the document. [---] is displayed when the name is unknown.
Printer Name	Displays the name of the destination logical printer. [---] is displayed when the name is unknown.

Displayed Item	Description
Size	Displays the size of the job in KB.
Change Job	Changes the priority of or cancels a job. (On the Administrator page only)

Cancel and Change the Priority of Jobs

Use this procedure to cancel a print job or change its priority.

> **Important** • These procedures can only be performed from the Administrator Page.
> • Completed jobs cannot be canceled or have their priority changed.

Procedure

1 Start Print Services on Web, log on as Administrator, and select the [Job and Log] tab.

> **Refer to** *Refer to 7.3 Print Services on Web for details on starting up Print Services on Web.*

2 Select [Job not completed].

A list of all jobs that are printing and queued will display on the right side of the screen.

(Note) *To reduce the size of the list, set up the [Logical printer] and [Logical printer number] fields, and then click the [Update] button. Set the [Update time] to automatically update the list, if desired.*

3 Click the [Change] link located on the right side of the job that you want to cancel or change.

The [Change job] page will display.

4 To cancel the job, click the [Execute] button.

5 To change the priority of the job, select either [High], [Normal], or [Low] from the [Priority] menu, and then click the [Apply] button.

(Important) *Only one job can be canceled at a time.*

Manage the Job and Error Logs

This function allows the user to print and delete the Job Log and the Error Log.

Important *It is only possible to display a list of jobs on the User page. All other operations must be carried out on the Administrator page.*

Refer to *Job log and error log management also can be performed from the printer control panel. Refer to 10.4 Managing the Job and Error Logs for more information.*

Job Log

The job log is a record of all completed print jobs. A variety of information is recorded here, including job numbers, the number of copies/prints, the input and output sizes, and the processing time.

Job logs can be set up to print automatically. Once the automatic printing mode has been enabled, the log data will print automatically whenever 51 pages of processed jobs accumulates. The maximum number of jobs that can be logged is 20,000. When the number exceeds this value, the oldest item in the log is deleted and the new information recorded.

Display the Job Log

1 Start Print Services on Web, log on as Administrator, and select the [Job and Log] tab.

Refer to *Refer to 7.3 Print Services on Web for details about starting Print Services on Web.*

Note *Although you can display and print log lists on the User page, you must be logged in as administrator to manipulate the log data.*
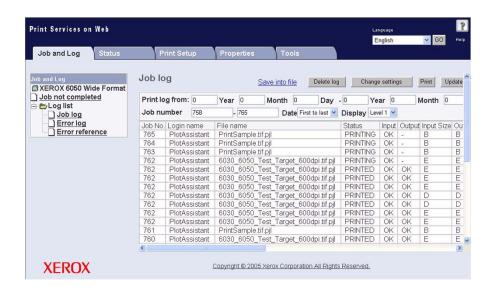
2 Select [Job Log] from the [Log list] menu. A list of processed jobs will display on the right side of the screen.

To display a subset of the logged print jobs:

- Enter a range in the [Job number] fields, and then click the [Update] button

  - or -

- Enter the inclusive dates in the [Print log from:] fields, and then click the [Update] button.

  A list of the specified jobs will display.

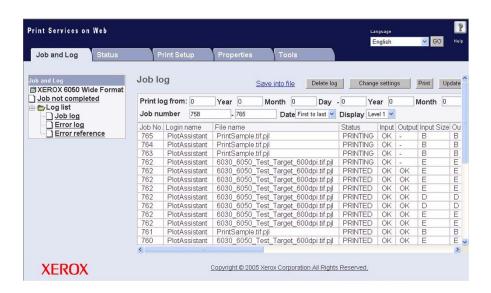(Note) *Use the [Date] menu to sort the jobs in either ascending or descending order by date.*

Print the Job Log (manually)

1 Start Print Services on Web, log on as Administrator, and display the [Job and Log] tab.

2 Select [Job log] from the [Log list] menu. A list of completed jobs will display on the right side of the screen.

To display a subset of the logged print jobs, enter a range in [Job number] or specify the period in the [Print log from:] fields, and then click the [Update] button. The list of the specified jobs will display.
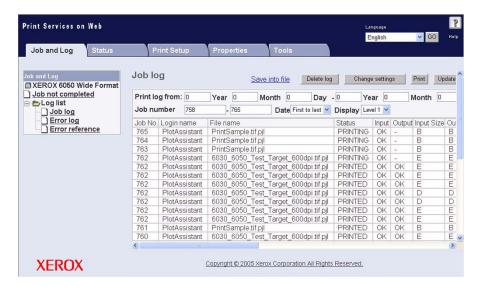
3 Click the [Print] button.

Print the Job Log (automatically)

1 Start Print Services on Web, log on as Administrator, and display the [Job and Log] tab.

2 Select [Job Log] from the [Log list] menu. A list of log information will display in the right pane.

3 Click [Change settings]. The [Job log setup] screen will display.
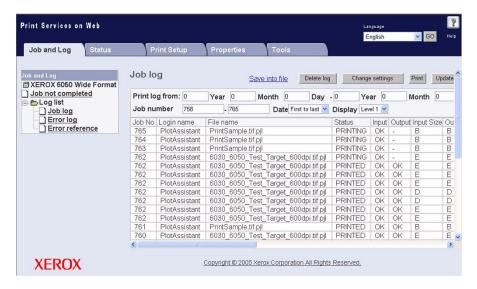
4 Select [ON] as the [Auto Print Setup] selection, and then click [Apply].
The job log will print automatically whenever sufficient job log entries
accumulate.

Delete the Job Log

1 Start Print Services on Web, log on as Administrator, and display the [Job and Log] tab.

2 Select [Job Log] from the [Log list] menu. The job log will display in the right pane.

3 Click the [Delete log] button.

A confirmation popup will display.

4 Select the [OK] button to delete the job log, or [Cancel] to retain the log.

Save the Job Log

1 Start Print Services on Web, log on as Administrator, and display the [Job and Log] tab.
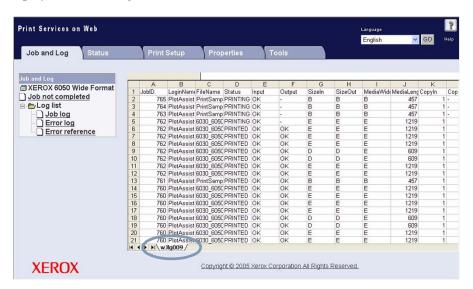
2 Select [Job Log] from the [Log list] menu. The job log will display in the right pane.

3 Further define the job log, if necessary, using the [Print log from], [Job number], [Date], and [Display] selections, and then click the [Save into file] link.

The job log will be saved in a comma-separated value (CSV) format, and displayed as in the figure below.

Display the Error Log
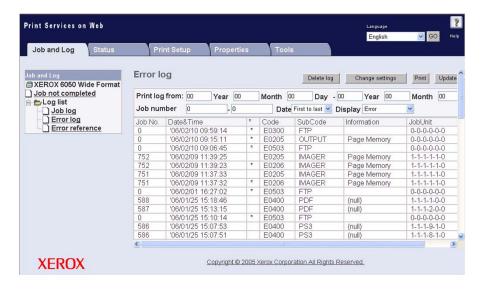
The Error Log is a record of information about the errors that occurred during job processing.

Procedure

1 Start Print Services on Web and display the [Job and Log] tab on either the User Page or the Administrator Page.

2 Select [Error Log] from the [Log list] menu. The error log will display on the right side of the screen.

Saving, Deleting, Printing the Error Log

The procedures for saving, deleting, and printing the error log(s) are the same as those for managing the job log(s). Refer to the relevant job log procedure when you need to change or save the error log data.

9.6 Print Services on Web: Status

The following operations can be performed using Print Services on Web.
- Display Printer Status
- Start and Stop Job Reception, Printing, and the Print Service

(Refer to) • *The Print Services on Web Help function provides step-by-step instructions for performing many of the tasks described below. It also provides lists and descriptions of the items and fields that appear on the screens. To access Help, click the [?] button in the upper, right corner of the screen.*

Display Printer Status

This function displays the status of the 6030/6050 Wide Format Printer and Copier/Printer.

Procedure

1 Start Print Services on Web and display the [Status] tab on either the User page or the Administrator page.

(Refer to) *Refer to 7.3 Print Services on Web for details on starting Print Services on Web.*

2 Click the [Update] button at the upper right corner of the tab to update the display.

The current status of the machine will display. Use the right scroll bar to see the remaining details.

(Note)   *You may select an interval at which the display will be updated using the [Update time:] menu at the upper right corner. You also may select [No auto update] to turn off the feature.*

Items Displayed on the Status tab

The following items are displayed on the status tab.

Displayed Item	Description
Print service	Displays the [Start] and [Stop] buttons used to start or stop the server.
Job reception	Displays the [Start] and [Stop] buttons used to start or stop job reception.
Print	Displays the [Start] and [Stop] buttons used to start or stop printing.
Printer model	Displays the model name of the printer.
Printer status	Displays the online/offline status of the printer.
Roll1 Roll2 Roll3(optional) Roll4 (optional)	Displays the size, type, and amount of media on each roll. The amount of media is indicated by the following symbols.
Manual feed	Displays [YES] if the optional MSI is installed. Displays [NONE] if the MSI is not installed.
IOT status	Displays the status of the printer. Refer to [IOT Status Details] in the next table.
Processing data format	Displays the data formats that can be processed.
Billing information	Displays the following: • Meter 1: The total area (in square feet or square meters) of media printed until now • Meter 2: The total length (in feet and meters) of media printed until now • Meter 3: The total number of stamp prints made until now

IOT Status Details

The following messages are displayed for the IOT status.

Displayed Item	Description
Idle	The printer is in standby mode, ready to receive a print job.
Printing	The printer is printing.
Warm-up	The printer is warming up.
Power off	The printer is powered off.
Lower power mode	The printer is in the low power mode.
Sleep mode	The printer is in the sleep mode.
Machine error	An error has occurred in the machine. Simultaneously press the <> and <> buttons on the printer control panel. If the machine does not recover, contact your Xerox Service Representative.
Paper jam	Media is jammed inside the printer. Follow the instructions on the control panel to remove the jammed media.
Check the printer	Follow the instructions on the control panel.
Door / tray open	A cover, tray, or door is open. Close it.
No media	The printer is out of media. Load the required media.
System error	A system error has occurred in the printer. Switch off the printer power, and then switch it on again. If the problem does not recover, contact your Xerox Service Representative.

Start and Stop Job Reception, Printing, and the Print Service

This function enables the following procedures to be performed.

- Stop job reception   Stops job reception from clients.

- Start job reception   Starts job reception.

- Stop printing   Jobs received from clients are placed in a [Queued] status

  and are spooled on the hard disk.
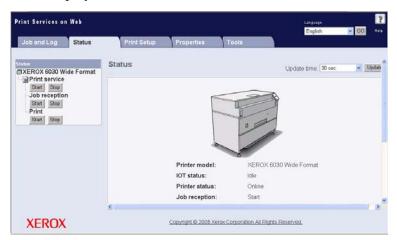
- Start printing   Starts the printing process.

- Stop print service   Suspends both job reception and printing.

- Start print service   Starts both job reception and printing.

> **Important**   *These procedures can only be performed from the Print Services on Web Administrator page.*

Procedure

1 Start Print Services on Web, log on as Administrator, and be sure the [Status] tab is displayed.

2 To start or stop job reception, click the [Job reception] [Start] or [Stop] button.

To start or stop printing, click the [Print] [Start] or [Stop] button.

To start or stop the server, click the [Print service] [Start] or [Stop] button.

9.7   Print Services on Web: Tools

The Print Services on Web [Tools] tab enables you to do the following:
- Print a Test Pattern
- Print a Diagnostic Report

(Important)   *These procedures can only be performed from the Administrator mode.*

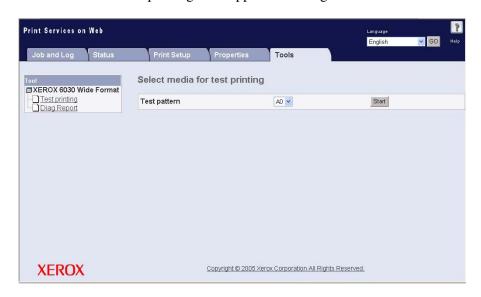(Note)   *Test printing also can be performed from the printer control panel. Refer to 10.3 Test Printing.*

(Refer to)   • *The Print Services on Web Help function provides step-by-step instructions for performing the tasks described below. It also provides lists and descriptions of the items and fields that appear on the screen. To access Help, click the [?] button in the upper, right corner of the screen.*

Print a Test Pattern

Procedure

1   Start Print Services on Web, log on as Administrator, and select the [Tools] tab.

2   Select [Test printing].
"Select media for test printing" will appear on the right side of the screen.

3   Select the media size (A0 to A4) from the menu, and then click [Start]. The test pattern will print.

Print a Diagnostic Report

Procedure

1 Start Print Services on Web, log on as Administrator, and select the [Tools] tab.

2 Select [Diag report].

3 "Diag Report" will appear on the right side of the screen.

4 Specify the inclusive report dates using the [Range (Date: YYMMDD):] field, and then click [Save].
A dialog box will display. You may choose to open and view the report or save it.
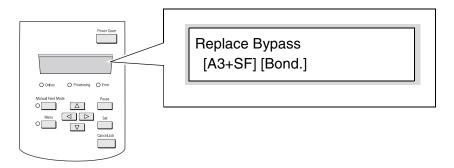
9.8 Manual Feed Printing

Manual feed printing is performed on cut sheet media that has been loaded in the MSI (Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit). The job information from the client must specify manual feeding. Manual feed printing is also possible using the following procedure.
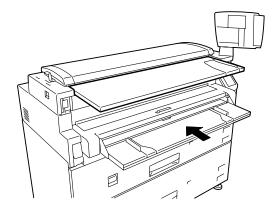
> **Important** *The optional (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit is required for manual feed printing.*

Procedure

1 Set [Media Source] for the logical printer to [Manual].

2 Send the print job to the 6030/6050 Wide Format Printer or Copier/Printer. The following message will display on the printer control panel if there is no media in the (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit.

Replace Bypass
[A3+SF] [Bond.]

3 Load the media in the (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit following the instructions displayed on the printer control panel.

Printing will start once the media is loaded.

Chapter 10

Additional Operations from the Printer Menu

10.1 Introduction

The printer control panel's menus enable the user to perform the following major tasks:

- Set up the system parameters using the [SYSTEM PARAMETERS] submenu.

- Set up the communication parameters using the [PORT SETTING] submenus.

- Print a test print using the [TEST PLOT] submenu.

- Manage the job log and the error log using the [JOB LOGGING] submenu.

- Reprint the latest print job using the [OFFLINE PLOT] submenu.

- Display billing meter information using the [BILLING INFO] submenu.

- Set up the media using the [PRINT SETUP] menu.

The procedures for setting up the system parameters and the communication parameters have been covered in previous chapters. This chapter will describe the procedures associated with the latter five capabilities in the above list.

10.2 Printer Control Panel Menu

The following is a list of the menus and submenus which can be accessed by pressing the <Menu> key and placing the printer in the offline mode. When the printer enters the offline mode, the first of two top level menus displays, that is, the [Network Port/Set] menu. From this menu the user can define the system parameters, perform port (communication) setup, run a test print (plot), manage job and error logs, set up reprinting (offline plot), and display billing meter information.
The second top level menu is [Print Setup]. It is accessed from the [Network Port/Set] item by pressing the [▼] key. This menu enables the user to define the roll and cut sheet media sizes, types, and weights, as necessary, when new or different media is loaded in the machine.
As a reminder, the following buttons are used to navigate the printer control panel menus.

<▲> key	Displays the previous menu item or value on the same menu level.
<▼> key	Displays the next menu item or value on the same menu level.
<▶> key	Displays the lower level menu item.
<◀> key	Displays the higher level menu item.

(Note) *Table items that are preceded by an asterisk [*] represent the values that can be selected. Values which are followed by a [⇨] mark lead to another, lower level, submenu or selection; these are accessed by pressing the < ▶ > key, after pressing the <Set> key to accept the previous selection.*

(Note) *It is recommended that the procedures covered in this chapter be performed using Print Services on Web.*

[Network Port/Set] Menu

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6
SYSTEM PARAMETER	Set Date	Set Date *YY/MM/DD hh: mm			
	AUTO ROLL	Roll→Tray	Roll→Tray *OFF *ON		
		Tray→Roll	Tray→Roll *OFF *ON		
	SPA PAPER WIDTH	SPA PAPER WIDTH *Sp A1 *Sp A2	Sp A1 *620 *625 Sp A2 *435 *440		
	Smoothing	Smoothing *OFF *ON			
	Low power mode1	Timer Value *1 to 120 min			
	Low power mode2	Timer Value *5 to 120 min			
	Sleep Mode	Sleep Mode *OFF *ON ⇨	Timer Value *15 to 120 min		
	Attention Light	Lamp	Not Available		
		Buzzer	Not Available		
	Print Density	Set Density -99 to 99			
	Job Recovery	Job Recovery *OFF *QUEUED *ALL			
	Net Cont. Time	Time Value *10 to 480 min			

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6
PORT SETTING	TCP/IP	Ethernet Setting	Ethernet Setting *AUTO *10BASE_T *100BASE_T		
		Default Parser	Default Parser *HPGL *TIFF *CALS *VERSATEC *PS/PDF		
		IP Address	IP Address *xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx		
		MASK Value	MASK Value *xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx		
		E-Net Address	E-Net Address (display only)		
		Dynamic Routing	Dynamic Routing *ON *OFF		
		Static Routing	Static Routing *ON ⇨ *OFF	ROUTING TABLE ADD	Dest. Address *xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
					Level 7
					Router Address *xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
				ROUTING TABLE PRINT	ROUTING TABLE SET: to Print

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6
PORT SETTING	SERIAL	Handshake	Handshake *XON/XOFF *HARDWARE *ENQ-ACK *SOFTWARE (ENQ-ACK and SOFTWARE only with HPGL)		
		Default Parser	HPGL		
		Baud Rate	Baud Rate *300 *1200 *2400 *4800 *9600 *19200		
		Parity	Parity *NONE *EVEN *ODD		
		Data Bit	Data Bit *7_BITS *8_BITS		
		Stop Bit	Stop Bit *1_BIT *2_BIT		
		EOP Timeout	EOP Timeout *OFF *ON ⇨	Timeout Value *1 to 255 sec	
		Output Response	Output Response *NO *YES		
		Job Separation	Job Separation *NO *YES		
	CENTRO (optional)	Ack Mode	Ack Mode *MODE0 *MODE1 *MODE2 *MODE3 *MODE7		
		DMA Timeout	DMA Timeout *1 to 255 sec		
		EOP Timeout	EOP Timeout *NO_TIMEOUT *TIMEOUT ⇨	Timeout Value *0 to 99 sec	
		Job Separation	Job Separation *NO *YES		

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6
PORT SETTING	VPI (optional)	Report Offline	Report Offline *NO *YES		
		EOP Timeout	EOP Timeout *NO_TIMEOUT *TIMEOUT ⇨	Timeout Value *1 to 255 sec	
		Job Separation	Job Separation *NO *YES		
	PRINT CONFIG	SET: to Print.			
TEST PLOT	TEST PLOT Plot Size	PLOT SIZE *A0 to A4	TEST PLOT SET: to Print.		
JOB LOGGING (See Note below)	JOB LOGGING JOB LOG	JOB LOG SETTING	SETTING Auto Mode	Auto Mode *OFF *ON	
		JOB LOG PRINT	PRINT LOG *YYMMDD - YYMMDD	SET: to Print.	
		JOB LOG CLEAR	SET: to Clear.		
	JOB LOGGING ERROR LOG	ERROR LOG PRINT	PRINT LOG *YYMMDD - YYMMDD		
		ERROR LOG CLEAR	CLEAR SET: to Clear.		
OFFLINE PLOT	REPLOT	Printed Copies	Printed Copies *1 to 99	SET: to Print.	
BILLING INFO	BILLING INFO VIEW	VIEW METER 1	METER 1 Area printed and copied (display only)		
		VIEW METER 2	METER 2 Length printed and copied (display only)		
		VIEW METER 3	METER 3 Number of stamp printouts (display only)		

Note) *The [Starting day to ending day] parameter for log management is specified in the YYMMDD format; (YY: 00 to 99, MM: 01 to 12, DD: 01 to 31)*

[Print Setup] Menu

The Print Setup menu should be used immediately after loading new media or changing the type and/or size of media in the media drawers or the bypass (MSI).

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6
PRINT SETUP	MEDIA *Roll1 *Roll2 *Roll3 *Roll4 *Bypass	MEDIA/Roll 1,2,3,4 Bypass *Type *Weight *Series *Trim *(The Trim option is not available for Bypass)*	Type *Bond *Vel *Film Weight *Ord. *Heavy *Light Series *A *Sp.A-1 *Sp.A-2 *ANSI *Arch *B Trim *1 *3 *2		
PRINT SETUP TRAY	Tray Roll3,4	TRAY/Roll3,4 *Enable *Disable			
	Tray Bypass	TRAY/Bypass *Enable *Disable			
PRINT SETUP FUSER	FUSER Temp.	Temp. *Auto *Manual ⇨	Temp./Manual *0 (L) - 7(H):4		
	FUSER Cycle Up				

10.3 Test Printing

This function prints out a test pattern to verify correct printer operation. The media size can be selected from A0 through A4.

(Refer to) *Refer to "7.2 Printer Control Panel Usage" for detailed instructions on printer control panel operation.*

Procedure

```
MENU
  TEST   PLOT
```

1 Press the < ▶ > key with [TEST PLOT] displayed on the parameter selection screen.

```
TEST   PLOT
  Plot  Size
```

2 Press the < ▶ > key.

```
Plot  Size
  A0                              *
```

3 Select the size of the media to print with the use of the <▼> and <▲> keys, and then press the <Set> key.
Press the < ▶ > key once it has been set.

```
TEST   PLOT
  SET :  to Print.
```

4 Press the <Set> key when [SET: to Print.] is displayed.
The test data will be printed.

10.4 Managing the Job and Error Logs

Log data for print jobs is saved in the following two logs.

- Job Log

- Error Log

The user can perform the following log management tasks from the printer control panel.

- Set up the system to print the job log automatically.

- Print the log data.

- Delete (clear) the job and error logs.

Job Log

This section explains the procedures for managing the job log from the printer control panel.

Procedure

```
MENU
  JOB  LOGGING
```

1 Press the < ▶ > key with [JOB LOGGING] displayed.

```
JOB  LOGGING
  JOB  LOG
```

2 Press the < ▶ > key with [JOB LOG] displayed.

```
JOB  LOG
  SETTING
```

3 Select the relevant operations with the use of the < ▼ > and < ▲ > keys, and then press the < ▶ > key.
The [SETTING], [PRINT], and [CLEAR] parameters will be displayed in that order.

↳ When [SETTING] is selected

```
SETTING
  Auto  Mode
```

1. Select [Auto Mode] with the use of the < ▼ > and < ▲ > keys, and then press the < ▶ > key.

```
Auto   Mode
 ON                         *
```

2. Select either [ON] or [OFF] with the use of the $<\blacktriangledown>$ and $<\blacktriangle>$ keys when [Auto Mode] has been specified, and then press the <Set> key.

Note   *When automatic printing is set to [ON], the processed jobs will be automatically printed out as soon as 51 pages of print data has accumulated.*

⤷ When [PRINT] is selected

```
PRINT LOG
 020423 – 020605
```

1. Select the starting date and ending date (YY, MM, DD) of the relevant jobs with the use of the $<\blacktriangledown>$ and $<\blacktriangle>$ keys, and then press the <Set> key.

   Move the cursor to the right-hand side and press the $<\blacktriangleright>$ key once the selection has been set.

   Note   *Move the cursor to the right and left with the use of the $<\blacktriangleleft>$ and $<\blacktriangleright>$ keys. To return to the previous menu, move the cursor to the left-hand side and press the $<\blacktriangleleft>$ key.*

```
PRINT
 SET :  to Print.
```

2. Press the <Set> key when a message stating [SET:to Print.] is displayed.
   The job log will be printed.

⤷ When [CLEAR] is selected

```
CLEAR
 SET :  to Clear.
```

Press the <Set> key when [SET: to Clear.] is displayed.
The job log will be deleted.

Error Log

This section explains the procedures for printing and clearing the error log.

Procedure

```
MENU
  JOB  LOGGING
```

1 Press the < ▶ > key with [JOB LOGGING] displayed.

```
JOB  LOGGING
 ERROR LOG
```

2 Display the [ERROR LOG] with the use of the <▼> key, and then press the < ▶ > key.

```
ERROR  LOG
 PRINT
```

3 Select the desired operation ([Print] or [Clear]) using the <▼> and <▲> keys, and then press the < ▶ > key.
The [PRINT] and [CLEAR] parameters will display, in that order.

↳ When [PRINT] is selected

```
PRINT LOG
 020423 – 020605
 ‾
```

1. Select the starting date and ending date (YY, MM, DD) of the period of interest using the <▼> and <▲> keys, and then press the <Set> key.
Move the cursor to the last character and press the < ▶ > key after making the selection.

   Note   *Move the cursor to the right and left with the use of the <◀ > and < ▶ > keys. To return to the previous menu, move the cursor to the left side and press the <◀ > key.*

```
PRINT
 SET :  to Print.
```

2. Press the <Set> key when a message [SET: to Print.] is displayed.
The error log will print.

```
CLEAR
  SET :  to Clear.
```

When [CLEAR] is selected

Press the <Set> key when [SET: to Clear.] is displayed.
The error log will be deleted.

Sample Error Log List

[ErrorLog : Page 1]						[Xerox 6050WF Version 2.X.XX]
JobNo	Data&Time	Task Name	ErrNo	ErrorLevel	Error Log	Error Data
1	02/04/17 15:49:30	OUTPUT	38	ERROR	PAGE MEMORY OVERFLOW	NO-PAGE-MEMORY Status from PrintMgr
20	02/04/22 20:38:05	HP PARSER	126	WARNING	UNRECOGNIZED_COMMAND	

10.5 Reprinting

This function reprints the file that was most recently printed. The copy quantity (1 to 99) also can be specified.

(Note)   *Reprinting can not be performed if a copy job has been performed after the print job.*

(Note)   *In order for reprinting to work, a job must be saved in memory.*

Procedure

```
MENU
  OFFLINE  PLOT
```

1 Press the < ▶ > key with [OFFLINE PLOT] displayed on the parameter selection screen.

```
OFFLINE  PLOT
  REPLOT
```

2 Press the < ▶ > key.

```
REPLOT
  Printed   Copies
```

3 Press the < ▶ > key.

```
Printed Copies
  06                          *
```

4 Select the print quantity with the < ▼ > and < ▲ > keys, and then press the <Set> key.
Press the < ▶ > key after selecting the print quantity.

    (Note)   *Move the cursor to the right and left with the use of the < ◀ > and < ▶ > keys.*

```
REPLOT
  SET  :  to Print.
```

5 Press the <Set> key when [SET: to Print.] is displayed.
The file will reprint.

10.6 Billing Meter Confirmation

This feature displays the billing meters on the printer control panel. Quantities of up to nine digits can be displayed.

Menu Item	Description
METER 1	Displays the total area of media printed (in square feet or meters).
METER 2	Displays the total length of media printed (in feet and meters).
METER 3	Displays the total number of stamp prints.

Procedure

```
MENU
  BILLING   INFO
```

1 Press the < ▶ > key with [BILLING INFO] displayed.

```
BILLING  INFO
  VIEW
```

2 Press the < ▶ > key.

```
VIEW
  METER 1
```

3 Select the meter you wish to display ([Meter 1], [Meter 2], or [Meter 3]) using the <▼> and <▲> keys, and then press the < ▶ > key.

```
METER 1
  986754
```

The selected meter and the current reading will display.
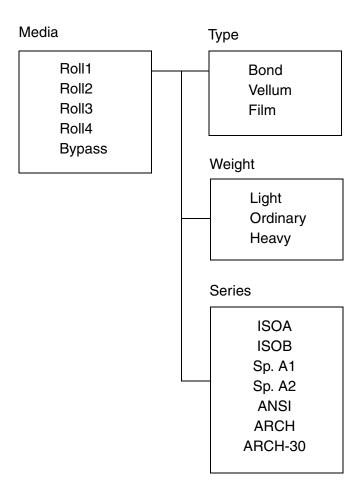
10.7 Print Setup Menu

This section explains the items which can be set up from the [PRINT SETUP] Menu on the printer control panel.

Menu Item	Description
Media	Sets up the type, size, weight, and other parameters for the media that are loaded in the machine.
Tray	Used to isolate the system from the machine settings when a fault occurs with optional rolls 3 and 4. **Important** *Consult with your Service Representative before changing this setting.*
Fuser	Used to switch the temperature of the fuser. **Important** *Consult with your Service Representative before changing this setting.*

Setting Up Media

The media type, weight, and size series must be set up whenever you load new media in the machine or change the type and/or size of the media in the trays or in the MSI/(Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Bypass). These settings can be made at the printer control panel using the Print Setup menu.
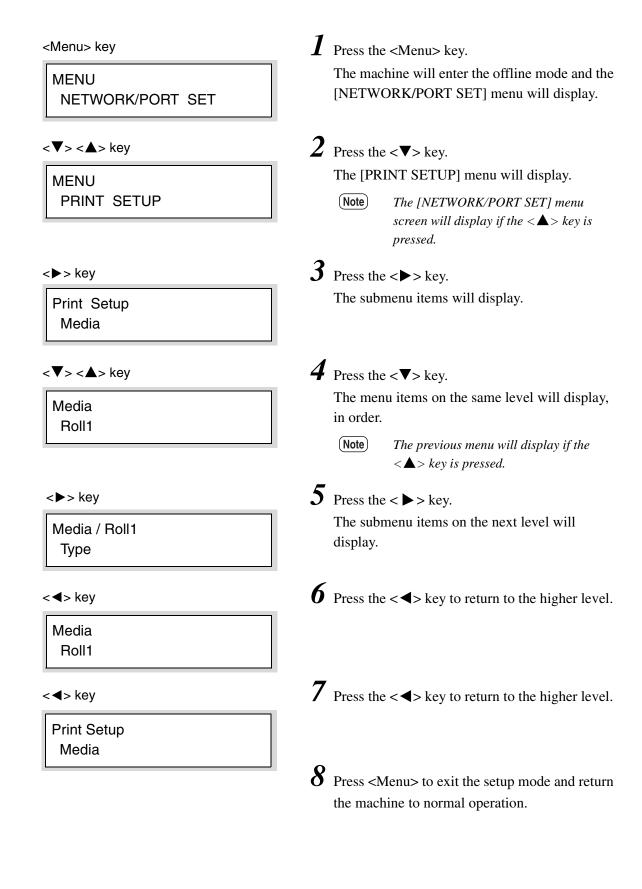
Media

| Roll1 |
| Roll2 |
| Roll3 |
| Roll4 |
| Bypass |

Type

| Bond |
| Vellum |
| Film |

Weight

| Light |
| Ordinary |
| Heavy |

Series

| ISOA |
| ISOB |
| Sp. A1 |
| Sp. A2 |
| ANSI |
| ARCH |
| ARCH-30 |

The media Size Series and sizes that can be set up are as follows.

Size Series	Eligible Media	
ISO A series	A4 (210 × 297 mm)	
	A3 (297 × 420 mm)	A3 roll media (297 mm wide)
	A2 (420 × 594 mm)	A2 roll media (420 mm wide)
	A1 (594 × 841 mm)	A1 roll media (594 mm wide)
	A0 (841 × 1,189 mm)	A0 roll media (841 mm wide)
ISO B series	B4 (250 x 353 mm)	B4 roll media (250 mm wide)
	B3 (353 x 500 mm)	B3 roll media (353 mm wide)
	B2 (500 x 707 mm)	B2 roll media (500 mm wide)
	B1 (707 x 1000 mm)	B1 roll media (707 mm wide)

Size Series	Eligible Media	
SP. A-1 series	SP. A-0 (880 × 1,230 mm)	SP. A-0 roll media (880 mm wide)
	SP. A-1 (625 × 880 mm)	SP. A-1 roll media (625 mm wide)
	SP. A-2 (440 × 625 mm)	SP. A-2 roll media (440 mm wide)
	SP. A-3 (312 × 440 mm)	SP. A-3 roll media (312 mm wide)
SP. A-2 series	SP. A-1 (620 × 871 mm)	SP. A-1 roll media (620 mm wide)
	SP. A-2 (435 × 620 mm)	SP. A-2 roll media (435 mm wide)
SP. A-3 series	SP. A-3 (310 × 435 mm)	SP. A-3 roll media (310 mm wide)
ARCH	36", 24", 18", 12", 9"	
ANSI	34", 22", 17", 11", 8.5"	
ARCH-30	30", 24", 18", 12", 9"	

The media [Weight] can been specified as follows:

Media set to [Light]	Bond (16-18lb./ 60-69g/m^2)	
	Vellum (18-20lb./ 70-79g/m^2)	
	Film (50-69μ)	
Media set to Ordinary [Ord.]	Bond (18-20lb./ 70-85g/m^2)	Premium (20lb./75gsm) Performance (20lb./75gsm)
	Vellum (20-24lb./ 80-95g/m^2))	Premium Tracing (24lb./ 90gsm)
	Film (70-80μ)	Premium Film (75micron)
Media set to [Heavy]	Bond (20-29lb./ 86-110g/m^2)	Presentation (29lb./110gsm)
	Vellum (24-29lb./ 96-112g/m^2)	Premium Tracing (29lb./112gsm)
	Film (81-100μ)	Premium Film (100micron)

Procedure

<Menu> key

```
MENU
  NETWORK/PORT  SET
```

1 Press the <Menu> key.

The machine will enter the offline mode and the [NETWORK/PORT SET] menu will display.

<▼> <▲> key

```
MENU
  PRINT  SETUP
```

2 Press the <▼> key.

The [PRINT SETUP] menu will display.

(Note)   *The [NETWORK/PORT SET] menu screen will display if the <▲> key is pressed.*

<▶> key

```
Print  Setup
  Media
```

3 Press the <▶> key.

The submenu items will display.

<▼> <▲> key

```
Media
  Roll1
```

4 Press the <▼> key.

The menu items on the same level will display, in order.

(Note)   *The previous menu will display if the <▲> key is pressed.*

<▶> key

```
Media / Roll1
  Type
```

5 Press the <▶> key.

The submenu items on the next level will display.

<◀> key

```
Media
  Roll1
```

6 Press the <◀> key to return to the higher level.

<◀> key

```
Print Setup
  Media
```

7 Press the <◀> key to return to the higher level.

8 Press <Menu> to exit the setup mode and return the machine to normal operation.

Selecting Values

This section provides an example of setting up a media value. The procedures for setting up other media values are similar.

```
Media
 Roll1
```

1 The menu items will display.

< ▶ > key

```
Media / Roll1
 Type : Bond
```

2 Press the < ▶ > key.
The specified value will display.

< ▼ > < ▲ > key

```
Media / Roll1
 Type : Film
```

3 Change the setting with the use of the < ▲ > and < ▼ > keys.

<Set> key

```
Media / Roll1
 Type : Film        *
```

4 Press the <Set> key to select the value.
An asterisk [*] will appear beside the selected value.

< ◀ > key

```
Media
 Roll1
```

5 Press the < ◀ > key to return to the higher level.

Tray

This normally is set to [Auto] and should not be changed by the user.
Consult your Xerox Service Representative before changing this setting.

Fuser

This normally is set to [Auto] and should not be changed by the user.
Consult with your Xerox Service
Representative before changing this
setting.

10.8 Automatic Cut Using the Printer Control Panel

This section describes how to cut the lead edge of the roll media.

Procedure

Print Settings 　Media	**1** Select [Media] from the menu displayed on the printer control panel.
<▶> key Media 　Roll1	**2** Press the <▶> key. The level from which the desired media is to be selected will be displayed.
<▼> key Media 　Roll2	**3** Press the <▼> key, and then select the roll that is to have its lead edge cut.
<▶> key Media ／ Roll2 　Type	**4** Press the <▶> key. The level from which the setting is to be selected will be displayed.
<▼> key Media ／ Roll2 　Trim	**5** Press the <▼> key and select <Trim>.
<▶> key Media ／ Roll2 　Trim ： 1	**6** Press the <▶> key. The level from which the number of cuts is to be selected will be displayed.
<▼> key Media ／ Roll2 　Trim ： 2	**7** Press the <▼> key and select either [1], [2] or [3].
<Set> key Media ／ Roll2 　Trim ： 2　　　　*	**8** Press the <Set> key. **9** Press the <Set> key. The lead edge cutting operation will be started. **10** Press the <◀> key to return to the higher level.

Chapter 11

Ethernet Print Service (for UNIX)

11.1 Overview of the Ethernet Print Service

Use the ftp command or the lpr command to print from the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format when running on UNIX.

This section explains how to set up the ftp and lpr commands and their formats.

> **Important** The file to be printed should be in a data format that the *Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format* supports. Sending a file with a data format that is not supported will result in a print error.
> Refer to "7.1 Overview of the 6030/6050 Wide Format Print Service" for information on supported data formats.

11.2 Registering the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format Printer System

To print from the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format printer system, the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format printer system should be registered on the TCP/IP network.

Host System Registration

When the network information is managed by a name service such as NIS or DNS, the IP address and host name must be registered there.
When a name service other than NIS and DNS is used, the IP address and host name must be registered in the database used to transfer the file on the client side.

SunOS 5.X

In the case of SunOS 5.X, register the IP address and host name of the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format printer in the [/etc/hosts] file that defines the printers connected to the network.

In the example below, the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format printer system with the host name [oklahoma] is registered in the [/etc/hosts] file with the IP address [zzz.zzz.zzz.zzz], in a network consisting of the two workstations called [cosmos] and [venus].

```
# Sun Host Database
#
# If the NIS is running, this file is only consulted when booting
#
127.0.0.1  localhost
#oklahoma is Wide Format 6050 plotter
xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx  cosmos loghost
yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy  venus
zzz.zzz.zzz.zzz  oklahoma
```

Registering the Remote Printer

For printing using the lpr command, both the host system and the remote printer must be registered on the client workstation.

Although the registration information depends on the system, the logical device names on the workstation must correspond with the logical printers on the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format printer system.

(Refer to) *Refer to the "Main Printing Functions" section in "7.1 Overview of the 6030/6050 Wide Format Print Service" for logical printer.*

SunOS 5.X

For SunOS 5.X, register the remote printer using the lpadmin command.

(Important) *You need to have root user privileges to use the lpadmin command.*

(Refer to) *For details of the lpadmin command, see SunOS 5.X User Guide.*

• Executing the lpadmin command

In the example below, the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format printer system with the host name [oklahoma] is registered.

If the printer devices plt00h, plt01h, and plt02h are specified, they are sent to the logical printers PLT00H, PLT01H, and PLT02H of [oklahoma].

```
#lpadmin -p plt00h -s oklahoma!PLT00H
#lpadmin -p plt01h -s oklahoma!PLT01H
#lpadmin -p plt02h -s oklahoma!PLT02H
```

(Important) *If csh is used, enter "\!" instead of "!" in the above to prevent the character "!" and subsequent characters from being replaced by the command log.*

In this example, the printer devices plt00h, plt01h, and plt02h are created new and set up. The Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format printer system has 100 logical printers for each supported data format. Therefore, 100 entries can also be set using the lpadmin command.

(Note) *You can register the remote printer using the admintool prepared by SunOS.*
To register the remote printer, select the menu [Printer Manager] > [Edit] > [Add Printer] > [Add Access to Remote Printer]. Specify a logical printer name PLT00H in Printer Name, a host name 6050 WF in Printer Server, and BSD in Print Server OS.

AIX 3.2.X

For AIX 3.2.X, register the remote printer in the [/etc/qconfig] file defining the printer- unique attributes.

- Editing the /etc/qconfig file

In the example below, the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format printer system called [oklahoma] is registered in the [/etc/qconfig] file.
With this setting, when you send a file to a printer device called [plt10h] or [plt20h], the file is sent to [oklahoma].

```
plt10h:
      host = oklahoma
      s_statfilter = /usr/lpd/bsdshort
      l_statfilter = /usr/lpd/bsdlong
      rq = PLT10H
      device = dplt10hdplt10h:
      backend = /usr/lpd/rembak
*
plt20h:
      host = oklahoma
      s_statfilter = /usr/lpd/bsdshort
      l_statfilter = /usr/lpd/bsdlong
      rq = PLT20H
      device = dplt20hdplt20h:
      backend = /usr/lpd/rembak
*
```

(Important) *Be sure to specify a logical printer prepared in the 6030/6050 Wide Format printer system using rq.*

- Starting the Print Queue

After finishing the settings, start the print queue using the qadm command.

Setting the MAC frame format

The Ethernet supports two MAC frame formats [Ethernet V2.0] and [IEEE802.3], but the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format printer system supports [Ethernet V2.0] only. When setting the MAC frame format in the host computer, specify [Ethernet V2.0].

11.3 Printing Using the ftp Command

Details of the ftp command are explained below.

(Note) *Bold characters represent input character strings in each example.*

Printing

This section explains the printing procedure using the ftp command.

Procedure

1 Enter the ftp command and the network that is registered with a Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format host name (example: 6050WF) at the client workstation.

A message indicating that the connection has completed will be displayed.

```
% ftp 6050WF
Connected to 6050WF.
220 6050 Wide Format FTP server ready
Name (6050WF:ftpusr):
```

2 Log on to the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format. Enter a user name (example: ftpusr) pre-registered in Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format.

You are prompted to enter a password.

```
Name (6050WF:ftpusr): ftpusr
331 Password required
Password:
```

(Note) *"ftpusr" is the only user registered at shipping. Users can be added using Print Services on Web. Refer to "8.5 System Parameter Setup (Print Services on Web)" for further details.*

3 Enter the password of the user logged in at Step 2.

If the user information registered in the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format matches the logged-in user password, the login acceptance message is displayed.

```
Password:
230 User logged in
ftp>
```

(Note)   *The password of the user (ftpusr) is* [*ftpusr*] *at shipping.*

4 Specify a logical printer (example: plt00h). Enter the logical printer name using the cd subcommand.

A message indicating that the logical printer has been set will be displayed.

```
ftp> cd plt00h
250 Changed directory to "/ata0-p1/plt00h"
ftp>
```

5 Specify the bin subcommand for a data format.

```
ftp> bin
200 Type set to A, bin mode
ftp>
```

(Note)   *The ascii subcommand can be specified only for HP-GL data.*
Specify the bin subcommand for HP-GL/2, HP-RTL, Versatec, TIFF, and CALS data. The bin subcommand can also be specified for HP-GL data.

6 Enter a print file name (example: kikai_01.hp) using the send or put subcommand.

A message indicating that the transferred port has been set will be displayed. A message indicating the file name, and a message indicating the transfer data volume and time depend on the client-side application.

```
ftp> sendplans_01.hp
200 Port set okay
150 Opening ASCII mode data connection
226 Transfer complete
local: plans_01.hp remote: plans_01.hp
17720 bytes sent in 0.14 seconds (1.2e+02 Kbytes/s)
ftp>
```

7 Specify the end. Enter the bye subcommand.

A message indicating that ftp command has completed will be displayed.

```
ftp> bye
221 Bye...see you later
%
```

Other Subcommands

This section explains the ftp subcommands.

ascii: Sets transfer data to the ASCII format.

bin: Sets transfer data to the binary format.

bye: Terminates FTP processing.

cd: Change directory; will display logical printer.

dir: Displays directory; will display logical printers set from the control panel.
If nothing is specified in the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format, only the logical printer at address 00 is displayed.

ls: Displays directory; will display logical printers set from the console panel.
If nothing is specified in the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format, only the logical printer at address 00 is displayed.

mput: Instructs the two or more specified files to be transferred to Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format interactively. However, this transfer can be specified to an existing logical printer only.

open: Connects the client workstation to the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format.

put: Transfers a specified file to the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format. However, this transfer can be specified to an existing logical printer only.

pwd: Present working directory; displays the currently specified logical printer name.

send: Transfers a specified file to the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format. However, this transfer can be specified to an existing logical printer only.

Message List

This section explains messages that may be displayed during printing using the ftp command.

```
Can't build data connection
```

Status: Cannot establish connection for data transfer.

Action: Wait a few moments and try again.

```
Can't create control file, please try later
```

Status: Cannot create a control file using the STOR command.

Action: Wait a few moments and try again.

```
Can't create status file, please try later
```

Status: Cannot create a job file using the LJ command.

Action: Wait a few moments and try again.

```
Can't open passive connection
```

Status: Cannot create a socket in passive mode.

Action: Wait a few moments and try again.

```
Cannot create file "xx" or permission problem
```

Status: Cannot open a parameter file for creating the specified file.

Action: Wait a few moments and try again.

```
Command "xx" not understood
```

Status: Command (XX) received not supported.

Action: Enter the correct command.

```
Control connection read error
```

Status: A control connection error occurred in the FTP command wait status.
Therefore, the connection was disconnected.

Action: For another transfer, establish the connection again.

```
Data connection error
```

Status: A data connection error occurred during file transfer.

Action: Establish the connection and transfer the file again.

```
Directory non existent or syntax error
```

Status: A non-existent directory (logical printer) is specified.

Action: Specify the correct directory (logical printer).

```
Error in input file
```

Status: An error occurred in an output file during transfer.

Action: Establish the connection and transfer the file again.

```
File "xx" not found or permission problem
```

Status: Failed to open or read a parameter file corresponding to the logical printer specified by the ls command.

Action: Wait a few moments and try again.

```
Insufficient storage space in system, please try later
```

Status: Cannot transfer data because the hard disk is full.

Action: Wait until a space is reserved on the hard disk, and start transfer again.

```
Invalid command
```

Status: An invalid command is received.

Action: Transfer the correct command.

```
Job queue is full, please try later
```

Status: Cannot receive data because the job queue is full.

Action: Wait a few moments and try again.

```
Local resource failure: Xerox 6030/6050 WF is busy
```

Status: Cannot accept data transfer because the system is overloaded.

Action: Check the system for a media-out or media jam error. Wait a few moments and try again. If the error occurs frequently, restart the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format.

```
Local resource failure: ReceiveCmplt status
```

Status: Failed to transfer the file.

Action: Wait a few moments and try again.

```
Local resource failure: ReceiveMComp
```

Status: Failed to receive the file transfer end message.

Action: Wait a few moments and try again.

```
Local resource failure: ReceiveMId
```

Status: Failed to receive the file transfer permission message.

Action: Wait a few moments and try again.

```
Local resource failure: SendMComp
```

Status: Failed to send the file transfer end message.

Action: Wait a few moments and try again.

```
Local resource failure: SendMId
```

Status: Failed to send the file transfer start message.

Action: Wait a few moments and try again.

```
Local resource failure: please start queuing
```

Status: Cannot accept file transfer because queuing is stopped.

Action: Start queuing and execute printing again.

```
Login failed
```

Status: The user name and password do not match.

Action: Log in again with the correct user name and password.

```
No file found or invalid directory or permission problem
```

Status: Failed to open the directory by the LIST command.

Action: Wait a few moments and transfer the command again.

```
Parameter not accepted
```

Status: ASCII or Binary is not specified by the TYPE command.

Action: Specify ASCII or Binary.

```
Syntax error: Please specify file structure only
```

Status: A file structure is not specified by the STRU command.

Action: Specify a file structure.

```
Syntax error: Please specify representation type
```

Status: A transfer type was not specified by the TYPE command.

Action: Specify the correct type.

```
Syntax error: Please specify send file name
```

Status: A file name was not specified by the STOR command.

Action: Specify the correct file name.

```
Syntax error: Please specify stream mode only
```

Status: A non-stream mode is specified by the MODE command.

Action: Specify the stream mode by the MODE command.

```
Time-out: closing control connection
```

Status: The connection is disconnected because nothing was transferred to the FTP within the specified time.

Action: For another transfer, establish the connection again.

```
Unimplemented TYPE x
```

Status: Transfer by an unsupported type was attempted.

Action: Specify [Image (Binary)] or [ASCII] with the TYPE command.

```
User  "xx" is not existed, need account for login
```

Status: Logged in with a user name that is not registered.

Action: Log in with a registered user name. In the factory, only [ftpusr] is registered as the user name.

```
USER and PASS required
```

Status: A user name or password was not specified by the USER or PASS command, or various commands were transferred without login.

Action: Log in with a registered user name and password and try again.

11.4 Printing Using the lp/lpr Command

Details of each command are explained.

Printing (lpr Command)

This section explains the printing procedure using the lpr command.

Format

lpr [-P<Logical Printer Name>] [-#<Copy Count>] [-s] <File Name>

-P<Logical Printer Name>

Specify a logical printer name immediately after P (with no space) to output data to the specified printer.
If no logical printer name is specified, the logical printer lpr is selected.

-#<Copy Count>

Specify the number of copies by entering a numeric value from 1 to 99. If 100 or more is specified, an error message is displayed and the specification is canceled.
If noting is entered, one copy is output.

-s

Specify this to transfer a file by a symbolic link without storing in the spool area.

Important) *Do not delete or modify the file specified by <File Name> before the processing of the print request ends completely.*

Note) *The lpr options other than above are ignored.*

Usage Examples

The printing procedure using the lpr command is as explained below.

Example 1:To print one copy of the file [drawa.hpgl] by logical printer [plt00h].

```
% lpr -Pplt00h drawa.hpgl
```

Example 2:To print two copies each of the files [drawb.hpgl] and [drawc.hpgl] by logical printer plt00h.

```
% lpr -Pplt00h -#2 drawb.hpgl drawc.hpgl
```

Example 3:To print one copy of the file [drawd.hpgl] by logical printer [plt01h].

```
% lpr -Pplt01h drawd.hpgl
```

Example 4:To print one copy each of the files [drawe.hpgl] and [drawf.hpgl] by logical printer [plt02h].

```
% lpr -Pplt02h drawe.hpgl drawf.hpgl
```

Printing (lp Command) (for SunOS 5.x)

This section explains the printing procedure using the lp command.

Format

lp [-d <Logical Printer Name>] [-n <Copy Count>] [-c] <File Name>

lp [-d <Logical Printer Name>

Data is output to the specified printer.

-n <Copy Count>

Specify the number of copies by entering a numeric value from 1 to 99. If 100 or more is specified, an error message is displayed and the specification is canceled.
If no entry is made, one copy is output.

-c

Specify this to create a copy of <File Name> before starting printing. A file is then transferred. If this is omitted, a file is transferred by a link without creating a copy of <File Name>.

Important *Do not delete or modify the file specified by <File Name> before the processing of the print request ends completely.*

Examples of use

The printing procedure using the lp command is as explained below.

Example 1:To print one copy of the file [drawa.hpgl] to logical printer [plt00h]

```
%  lp -d plt00h -c drawa.hpgl
```

Example 2:To print two copies each of the files [drawb.hpgl] and [drawc.hpgl] to logical printer plt00h

```
%  lp -d plt00h -c -n 2 drawb.hpgl drawc.hpgl
```

Example 3:To print one copy of the file [drawd.hpgl] to logical printer [plt01h]

```
%  lp -d plt01h -c drawd.hpgl
```

Status Display (lpq Command)

This section explains how to display the status of a file that has been specified for printing using the lpr command.

Format

lpq [-P<Logical Printer Name>]

-P<Logical Printer Name>

Enter the name of the logical printer immediately after the P (with no space). After doing this, the status of the file(s) being processed by the specified logical printer will display. If a logical printer name is not entered, the status of file(s) named lp will display.

Examples of use

Example 1:Display the status of a file transferred to logical printer [plt00h].

If no file is being processed, the following message will be displayed.

```
% lpq -Pplt00h
no entries
%
```

Example 2:Display the status of a file transferred to logical printer [plt01h].

When the transfer of the [drawd.hpgl] file to the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format is completed, the following message will be displayed.

```
% lpq -Pplt01h
Job ID  Sent By    Status  Prior.     Document Name  Prt    Size(KB)
123      williams   Queued  Normal     drawd.hpgl     O1H    980


%
```

Example 3:Display the status of a file transferred to logical printer [plt01h].

When the transfer of the file [drawd.hpgl] to the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format is completed, and the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format has received the next job, the following message will be displayed.

```
% lpq -Pplt01h
Job ID  Sent By    Status      Prior.  Document Name  Prt   Size(KB)
123      williams  Queued      Normal  drawd.hpgl     O1H   980
124      Unknown   Receiving   Normal  Unknown        O1H   Unknown
%
```

Example 4:Display the status of a file transferred to logical printer [plt01h]

The message below indicates:

- That the transfer of the files [drawa.hpgl] and [drawb.hpgl] to the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format is complete, and that file [drawa.hpgl] file is printing.
- That the files [drawe.hpgl] and [drawf.hpgl] are in the client queue waiting for transfer.

```
% lpq -Pplt01h
Job ID  Sent By   Status    Prior.  Document Name  Prt   Size(KB)
  123   williams  Printing  Normal  drawa.hpgl     O1H   980
  124   smith     Queued    Normal  drawb.hpgl     O1H   5963

cosmos: sending to oklahoma
Rank     Owner    Job     Files
1st      smith    416     drawe.hpgl
2nd      smith    417     drawf.hpgl
%
```

(Note) *The information starting with* [*Job ID Sent By Status Prior. Document Name Prt Size (KB)*] *indicates the status of the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format.*
[*cosmos: sending to oklahoma*] *or* [*Rank Owner Job Files Total Size*] *indicates the client status.*
*The job ID for the client and the job ID for the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Forma*t *are assigned separately.*

Cancel (lprm Command)

This section explains how to cancel a print job submitted from the network.

Format

lprm [-P<Logical Printer Name>] <Job ID>

-P<Logical Printer Name>

Specify a logical printer name immediately after the P (with no space) to cancel a print job that is being processed by the specified printer. If no logical printer name is specified, the print job being processed by logical printer lp is canceled.

<Job ID> Specify the job ID of the job to be canceled. The status display command [lpq] displays job IDs. If this is omitted, all print jobs are canceled.

(Note) *Job IDs on the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format side and the client side are allocated separately.*

Examples of use

Example 1:Displays the status of logical printer [plt01h] and the canceling of job ID [124].

```
% lpq -Pplt01h
Job ID  Sent By    Status      Prior.  Document Name   Prt   Size(KB)
   123   williams  Printing   Normal  drawa.hpgl      O1H   980
   124   smith     Queued     Normal  drawb.hpgl      O1H   5963


cosmos: sending to oklahoma
Rank    Owner     Job      Files
1st     smith     416      drawe.hpgl
2nd     smith     417      drawf.hpgl
% lprm -Pplt01h 124
job 124 dequeued
%
```

Example 2:Displays the status of logical printer [plt01h] and the canceling of job ID
[123]

This print job cannot be canceled because it is already in progress.

```
% lpq -Pplt01h
Job ID Sent By    Status     Prior. Document Name  Prt  Size(KB)
   123  williams  Printing   Normal drawa.hpgl      O1H  980
   124  smith     Queued     Normal drawb.hpgl      O1H  5963


cosmos: sending to oklahoma
Rank     Owner     Job     Files
1st      smith     416     drawe.hpgl
2nd      smith     417     drawf.hpgl
% lprm -Pplt01h 123
job 123 can not be dequeued
%
```

Example 3:Displays the status of logical printer [plt01h] and the canceling of job ID
[417] in the client queue

```
% lpq -Pplt01h
Job ID Sent By    Status     Prior. Document Name  Prt  Size(KB)
   123  williams  Printing   Normal drawa.hpgl      O1H  980
   124  smith     Queued     Normal drawb.hpgl      O1H  5963


cosmos: sending to oklahoma
Rank     Owner     Job     Files
1st      smith     416     drawe.hpgl
2nd      smith     417     drawf.hpgl
% lprm -Pplt01h 417
dfA417cosmos dequeued
dfA417cosmos dequeued
dfA417cosmos dequeued
%
```

Example 4: Displays the status of logical printer [plt01h] and the canceling of job ID [416] in the client queue

If the file transfer to the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format completes before the job in the client queue is canceled, the print job cannot be canceled. Display the Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format print status, check the job IDs of the logical printer, and cancel the print job again.

```
% lpq -Pplt01h
Job ID  Sent By    Status     Prior. Document Name   Prt  Size(KB)
   123  williams   Printing   Normal drawa.hpgl       O1H  980
   124  smith      Queued     Normal drawb.hpgl       O1H  5963
cosmos: sending to oklahoma
Rank     Owner     Job      Files
1st      smith     416      drawe.hpgl
2nd      smith     417      drawf.hpgl
% lprm -Pplt01h 416
%
% lpq -Pplt01h
Job ID  Sent By    Status     Prior. Document Name   Prt  Size(KB)
125      smith      Queued    Normal drawd.hpgl       O1H  1980
%
% lprm -Pplt01h 125
Job 125 dequeued
%
```

Message List

This section explains messages that may be displayed during printing using the lpr command. These messages depend on the system because they are output from the client workstation.

```
Cannot create /usr/spool/pltXXX/.seq
```

Status: The lpd daemon on the client failed to create a control file.

Action: Check the spool directory.

```
Copy file is too large
```

Status: The data is too large to store in the spool directory.

Action: Extend the spool directory area or attach the [-s] flag, then execute the lpr command using a symbolic link.

```
XXprinter:Jobs queued, but cannot start daemon
```

Status: Cannot start the lpd daemon on the client.

Action: Restart the daemon by the lpr command.

```
XXprinter:Printer queue is disabled
```

Status: The queue is stopped.

Action: Restart the daemon by the lpr command.

```
XXprinter:Unknown printer
```

Status: A printer that is not registered in the system was specified.

Action: Check the printer registration in the [/etc/printcap] file.

```
jobXX can not dequeue
```

Status: Failed to delete job No.XX in the print service queue.

Action: Check by the lpq command whether the specified job has already changed from the wait status in the queue to the processing status.

```
PLTXX can not dequeue
```
Status: Failed to delete a job from logical printer PLTXX on the print service side.

Action: Check by the lpq command whether the specified job has already changed from the wait status in the queue to the processing status.

```
connection busy
```
Status: Failed to establish connection for data transfer.

Action: No action is necessary. The print service side accepts data transfer requests for up to 10 sessions. This message is displayed if requests are received for more than 10 sessions. Usually, resubmission is executed on the client side.

Chapter 12

Maintenance

12.1 Loading Toner
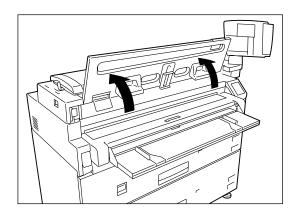
Important Load no more than one cartridge of toner when the message "Add Black Toner" first appears on the printer control panel.

Observe the following precautions when handling the toner.
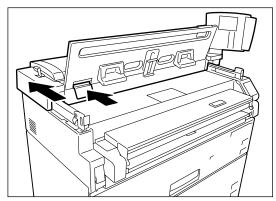
- Handle the toner carefully to avoid spilling it on your clothing or around the machine.
- Never throw a used toner cartridge in an open flame.

Load the toner as described below.
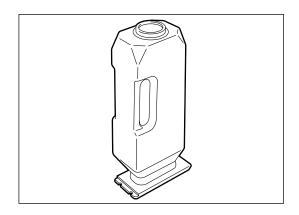
Procedure

1 Lift the scanner document table until it locks in the open position.
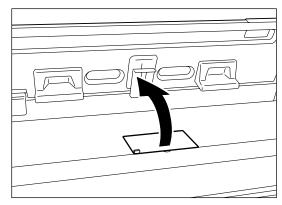
2 Push in the lever shown in the illustration and push the entire scanner assembly toward the back of the machine. The toner supply port will appear at the front of the scanner.
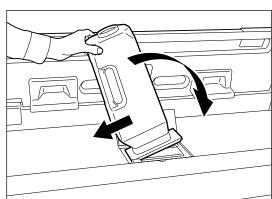
3 Take the toner cartridge out of the package and prepare it for loading.

(Note) *Shake the toner cartridge well to ensure that the toner will dispense properly.*
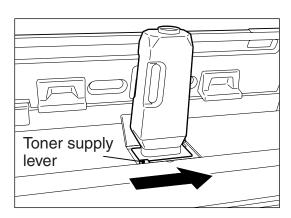
4 Open the lid of the toner supply port.

5 Insert the left side notch, located at the bottom of the toner cartridge, into the end of the toner supply port. Then hold the toner cartridge vertically on top of the supply port.
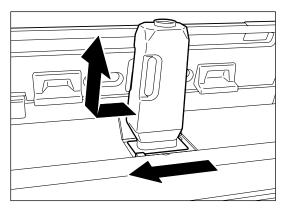
(Important) *Align the protruding part of the cartridge with the notch when inserting it in the port.*

Toner supply lever
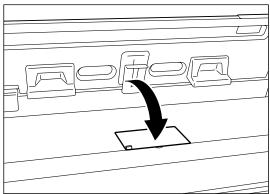
6 Slide the toner supply lever to the right. The cover at the bottom of the toner cartridge will open and the toner will be released into the machine.

(Note) *Tap the toner cartridge gently to ensure that all of the toner is poured into the machine.*
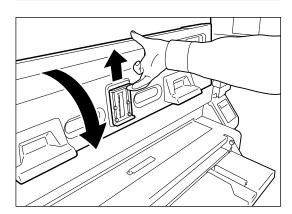
7 Slide the toner supply lever back and remove the cartridge.
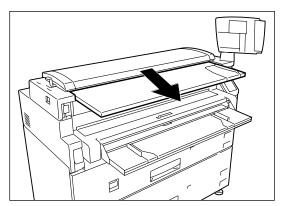
8 Close the lid on the toner supply port.

> **Important** • If the toner splashes around the toner supply port, clean the area after the loading is completed.
> • Toner may adhere to the bottom of toner cartridge. Be careful to prevent the toner from getting on your hands or clothing.

9 Pull up the lock lever in the middle rear of the scanner document table and then close the document insertion guide.
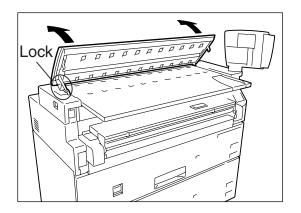
10 Pull the scanner back to the front.
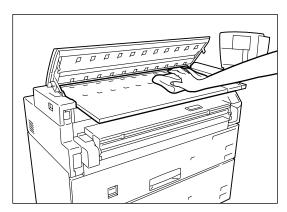
12.2 Cleaning the Scanner

The scanner requires periodic cleaning to remove contamination from scanned originals.

Procedure
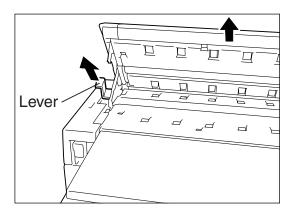
1 Lift the top of the scanner until the lock on the left engages, holding the scanner in the open position.

2 Clean the scanning area with a clean, soft, dry cloth. Wipe the scanning area completely.

3 While holding the top of the scanner in a raised position, unlock it by pulling the lever shown in the illustration in the direction of the arrow. Close the top of the scanner.

Chapter 13

Problem Solving

13.1 Check the Control Panel(s)

When a machine failure is suspected, for example, when a print cannot be made or the image quality is defective, first check for error messages or error codes on the copier control panel or the printer control panel.

When an error code is displayed, press the <◀> and <▶> keys on the printer control panel at the same time. If the error reoccurs after pressing these buttons, contact your Service Representative.

13.2 Poor Image Quality

Perform the following corrective measures if the copies or prints display one of the image quality defects listed below.

Image Quality Defect	Corrective Measure
Streaks or black spots appear on the print	Check the scanner to determine if it is dirty. • Clean the scanner. Refer to *"12.2 Cleaning the Scanner"* in *"Chapter 12 Maintenance"*.
The print displays excessive background	Verify that the image density setting is correct. Check the quality of the original. • Reduce the image density setting. • Increase the background suppression setting.
Some parts of the image did not print or are blurred	Verify that the image density setting is correct. • Change the image density setting. Determine if the media is damp. • Switch on the paper heater switch, if it is off. • Replace the damp media with new media. • Change the sharpness setting. Confirm that the size of the document does not exceed the limit. • Check the length and width of the document. If the size exceed the limit, split the document and copy it in sections. • Verify that sufficient memory is installed.
The machine will not copy	Verify that the image side of the document is inserted correctly (facing down). • Insert the document in the correct orientation. Verify that the correct features have been selected. • Check the feature settings on the copier control panel.
The copy/print is wrinkled	Determine if the media is damp. • Switch on the paper heater switch, if it is off. • Replace the damp media with new media.

13.3 Other Problems

Follow the instructions provided in the table to recover from the errors which are listed.

Error	Recovery
Nothing is displayed on the printer control panel or the copier control panel	• Verify that the machine is connected to a correctly rated power supply, that the power plug is plugged in, and that the power switches and the circuit breaker switch are in the On positions. • Adjust the contrast of the touch screen.
"Ready to Copy" does not display	• Check the printer control panel and copier control panel displays for error messages or error codes. • Perform the corrective measures indicated on the control panels. • If the condition does not improve, contact your Service Representative.
It is not possible to insert documents	• Check the printer control panel and copier control panel displays for error messages or error codes. • Perform the corrective measures indicated on the control panels. • If the condition does not improve, contact your Service Representative.
Media jams occur frequently	• Check for and remove loose pieces of media from inside the machine. • Verify that the media is not curled, folded, wrinkled, or torn. Replace the media if any of these conditions apply. • Verify that the media is loaded correctly. Reload the media if necessary. • Verify that suitable media is being used. Only use paper recommended by your Service Representative.
Document jams occur frequently	• Verify that the document is not folded, wrinkled, or torn.

13.4 Copier/Printer Troubleshooting

This section describes the solutions for problems which may arise with the copier/ printer.

Note *Follow the instructions provided on the touch screen when error messages display on the control panel.*

Nothing is displayed on the control panel.

Verification #1:	Is the scanner power cord connected?
Solution:	Plug in the power cord firmly to reconnect the scanner.
Verification #2:	Are the power switches (two locations) switched on?
Solution:	Switch on the power switches.
Verification #3:	Is the control panel contrast setting too dark?
Solution:	Adjust the contrast dial.

Refer to *Refer to "1.5 Copier Control Panel" for details on the contrast dial.*

The copies are soiled.

Verification #1:	Is the scanning area or platen roller dirty?
Solution:	Clean the scanning area.
Verification #2:	Does the document being scanned have a high level of transparency?
Solution:	Adjust either the image density setting or the background suppression setting.
Verification #3:	Is the document printed on colored paper, rough paper, or blueprint paper?
Solution:	Adjust either the image density setting or the background suppression setting.

Refer to *Refer to "3.8 Image Density" and "3.9 Background Suppression" for details on image density and background suppression.*

The copies are too dark.

Verification #1:	Has the image density been set too dark?
Solution:	Decrease the image density setting. If the condition does not improve, contact your Service Representative.

Refer to *Refer to "3.8 Image Density" for details on image density.*

The copies are too light.

Verification #1:	Is the density of the document too light?
Verification #2:	Has the image density been set too light?
Solution:	Increase the density level.

(Refer to) *Refer to "3.8 Image Density" for details on image density.*

Parts of the document do not copy.

Verification #1:	Is the paper damp?
Solution:	Some areas of a document will not reproduce and there will be a loss of sharpness if the paper is damp. Replace the paper with paper from an unopened package. If the condition does not improve, contact your Service Representative.

(Refer to) *Refer to "1.9 Using Originals" for details on handling paper.*

The copy is misaligned or angled.

Verification #1:	Was the document correctly aligned with the document insertion guide when scanned?
Solution:	Align the document with the document insertion guide when scanning.

(Refer to) *Refer to "1.9 Using Originals" for details on loading documents.*

It is not possible to copy in the required size.

Verification #1:	Was the document misaligned or skewed when scanned?
Solution:	Feed the document correctly.
Verification #2:	Are the auto mode settings incorrect?
Solution:	Set up the auto mode settings correctly.

(Refer to) *Refer to "3.2 Making Copies in the Auto Mode" for details on the auto mode.*

Black lines are printed on the copy.

Verification #1:	Is the scanner's platen roller dirty?
Solution:	Clean the scanner.

(Refer to) *Refer to "Chapter 12 Maintenance" for details on taking care of the machine.*

Shadows are printed on the copies.

Verification #1: Does the document consist of more than one piece of paper joined together? Has the document been folded? Is the document a tracing paper, film, or other media with a high level of transparency?

Solution: Adjust the background suppression.

(Refer to) *Refer to "3.9 Background Suppression" for details on background suppression.*

13.5 Printer Troubleshooting

This section provides recovery methods for problems which are associated with printing.

Paper size #1 was mistakenly selected.

⇨ There are cases where it is possible to override this with the [Media Margin] settings. The [Media Margin] settings are the values that set the top, bottom, left and right margins in order for the machine to determine the input size. By setting the margin values outside the scope of the paper, it is possible to reduce the input judgment size.

(Refer to) *Refer to the "Input Size Margin" section of "9.3 Logical Printer Print Settings" for details on available functions.*

No paper error occurs even when paper has been set in place.

⇨ There is a chance that the paper actually set in place differs from the settings made in either [Media Mapping], [Media Type] or [Media Series]. Check each of these settings to ascertain they are correct.

(Refer to) *Refer to the "Size/Media Mapping" section, the "Media Type" section, and the "Media Series" section in "9.3 Logical Printer Print Settings" for details on available functions.*

TIFF data will not print properly.

⇨ Check the compression format of the TIFF data. TIFF data compressed with the LZW format is not supported by the 6030/6050 Wide Format and will not print.
If the image is printed but either in enlarged or reduced sizes, there are cases where this can be overridden by making sure that resolution for the TIFF data is correctly set in [TIFF Option].

(Refer to) *Refer to the "TIFF Option" section in "9.3 Logical Printer Print Settings" for details on setting the resolution.*

Required lines will not print.

⇨ It may be possible to print the lines by changing the [White Mode] setting on the [Color Option]. The [White Mode] setting determines whether the lines will be drawn in white or in black when a [White Mode] instruction is received.
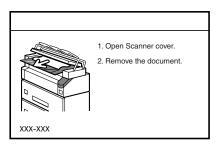Faint lines that are assigned the color white may not print if the [White Mode] is set to [Enable]. To resolve this problem, change the [White Mode] setting to [Disable].

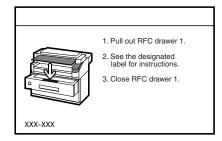(Note) *The [White Mode] is valid for HP-GL and Versatec data only.*

(Refer to) *Refer to the "Color Option" section of "9.3 Logical Printer Print Settings" for details on available functions.*
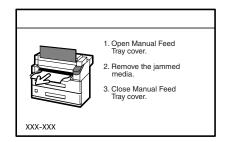
13.6 Clearing Jams

The location of a document or media jam will be displayed on the copier control panel's touch screen. Follow the messages on the screen to clear the jam.
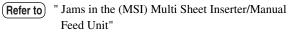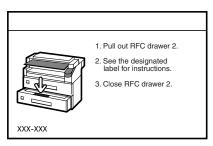
1. Open Scanner cover.
2. Remove the document.

XXX-XXX

(Refer to) " Document Jams"

1. Pull out RFC drawer 1.
2. See the designated label for instructions.
3. Close RFC drawer 1.

XXX-XXX

(Refer to) " Jams in the Feeder (Roll Media)"

1. Open Manual Feed Tray cover.
2. Remove the jammed media.
3. Close Manual Feed Tray cover.

XXX-XXX
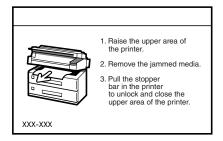
When the (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit is installed
(Refer to) " Jams in the (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit"

1. Pull out RFC drawer 2.
2. See the designated label for instructions.
3. Close RFC drawer 2.

XXX-XXX

When an additional dual roll media tray is installed.
(Refer to) " Jams in the Feeder (Roll Media)"

1. Raise the upper area of the printer.
2. Remove the jammed media.
3. Pull the stopper bar in the printer to unlock and close the upper area of the printer.

XXX-XXX
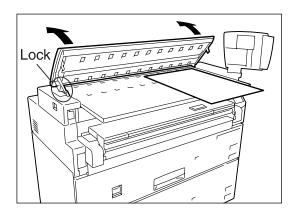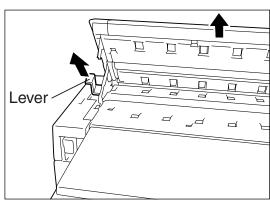
(Refer to) " Jams in the Printer and Ejection Port"

Document Jams

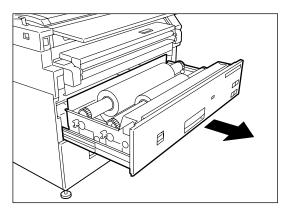Remove jammed documents from the scanner following the procedure below.

Procedure

1 Lift up the top of the scanner until the lock at the left engages, holding the scanner in the open position.

2 Pull the document toward you to remove it.

> **Important** *Pull the document slowly. The use of excessive force may result in damage to the machine or the original.*

3 While lifting up on the top of the scanner, unlock the scanner by pulling the lever shown in the illustration in the direction of the arrow. Close the top of the scanner.
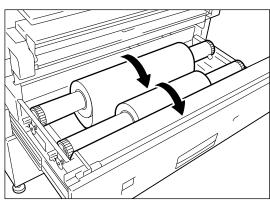
Jams in the Feeder (Roll Media)

Media jams in the roll feeder(s) are caused by incorrect media loading methods and defects in the media feeding mechanism. Reload the media according to the following procedure.
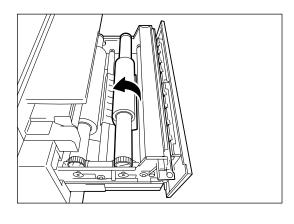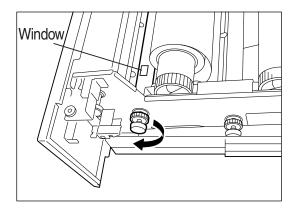
Procedure
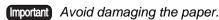
1 Open the media tray.

2 Rewind the media on the roll from which the jam has occurred by rotating it toward you. If the lead edge of the media is folded or damaged in any way, cut it straight across with the cutter or scissors.
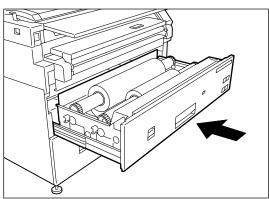
> **Important** *Avoid damaging the paper.*

> **Refer to** *Refer to sections "1.14 Cutting Roll Media" and " Cutting Roll Media Manually" for instructions on how to cut the lead edge of the roll media.*

3 Rotate the roll until the lead edge is gripped in the roller.

Window

4 Rotate the knob until the lead edge of the media can be seen in the window.

(Note) *Rotate the knob at the rear if the jam occurred with the rear roll.*

5 Gently but firmly close the media tray until it is as far back as it can go.
The LED on the front of the media tray will illuminate, and the roll paper will be automatically positioned.
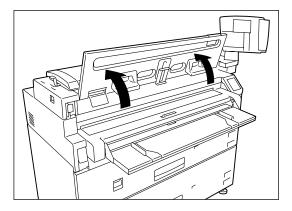
Jams in the (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit

Remove media jams from the (MSI) Multi Sheet Inserter/Manual Feed Unit following the procedure below.
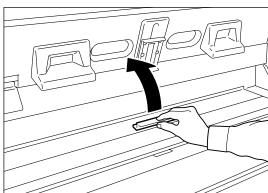
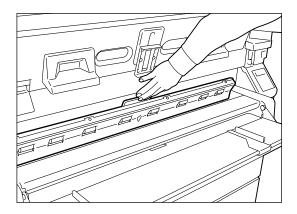Note *Steps 1 and 5 are required when clearing MSI media jams in Copier/Printers.*

Procedure

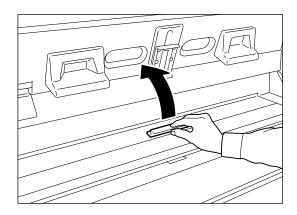*1* Lift up the scanner document table until it locks in the raised position.

2 Open the cover of the manual insertion unit.

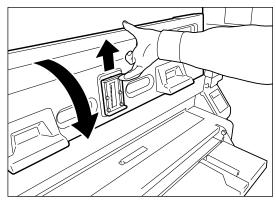
3 Pull the jammed paper toward the front of the manual insertion guide to remove it. Check to be certain that no paper remains inside the machine; remove all pieces if any does.

Important *Avoid damaging the paper.*

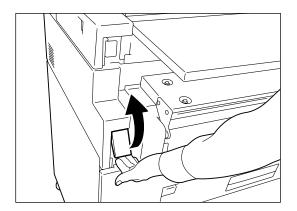*4* Close the cover of the manual insertion unit.

5 Lift the lock lever located in the middle at the back of the scanner document table, and then close the document table.
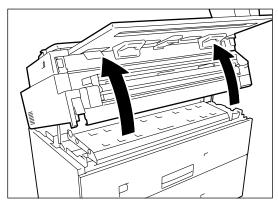
Jams in the Printer and Ejection Port

Remove media jams from the printer and ejection port following the instructions below.

Procedure
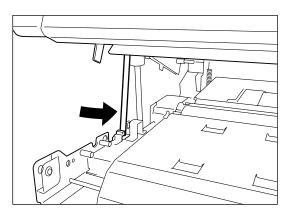
1 Lift up the lever located on the left-hand side of the output unit.
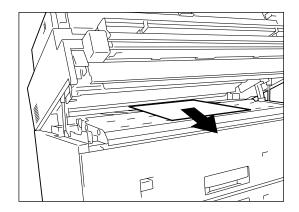
2 Use both hands to lift up the top of the unit.
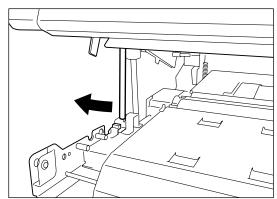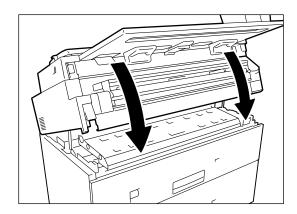
> **Important** *The top of the unit cannot be lifted if the scanner's lock has been released. Lock the scanner before attempting this procedure.*

3 Check to determine if the green stopper is located toward the back of the unit.
Push it to the back if it is located at the front.

4 Pull the jammed media slowly toward you to remove it.

> **Important** • Avoid damaging the media.
> • Do not touch any of the high-temperature components in the machine when removing paper jams.


5 Pull the green stopper to the front.

6 Grasp the document table with both hands and gently but firmly lower it into place.

> **Important** • Ensure that the weight of the document table is distributed equally between both hands when lowering it into place.
> • Take care to avoid getting your fingers caught.

Chapter 14

Specifications

14.1 Main Specifications

Supported data formats

- HP-GL formats: HP-GL, HP-GL2, and HP-RTL
- Versatec formats: Versatec Random Format (VRF), Versatec Color Graphic Language (VCGL)
- TIFF formats: Conforming to TIFF version 6.0
- CALS formats: CALS type 1
- PS/PDF formats: PostScript 3, PDF Version 1.3 (optional)

Relationship between data formats and interfaces

Some data types cannot be processed, based on the interface type. The relationships between data formats and interface types are shown in the table below.

Data Formats		CENTRONICS	RS232C	TCP/IP	VPI
HP-GL formats	HP-GL	Y	Y	Y	N
	HP-GL/2	Y	Y	Y	N
	HP-RTL	Y	N	Y	N
Versatec formats	VRF	N	N	Y	Y
	VCGL	N	N	Y	Y
TIFF formats	TIFF	N	N	Y	N
CALS formats	CALS	N	N	Y	N
PS/PDF formats	PostScript	N	N	Y	N
	PDF	N	N	Y	N

Host system interfaces

TCP/IP

Physical interface:	100Base-TX and 10Base-T
	(Transfer speed Manual selection, automatic selection)
Maximum transfer speed:	100 Mbps and 10 Mbps
Data link:	Ethernet version 2

RS232C

Physical interface:	EIA-232-E conformant to RS-232C serial
Maximum transfer speed:	38400 bps
Maximum cable length:	15 m

Centronics

Physical interface:	Conforming to the TTL level IEEE STD 1284 interface
	8-bit parallel peripheral
Maximum transfer speed:	666 kbps
Maximum cable length:	6 m

VPI

Physical interface:	Versatec Parallel Interface
	8-bit parallel
Maximum transfer speed:	1 Mbps
Maximum cable length:	300 m

Ethernet connection

Server function:	Data transfer by lpr and FTP
Maximum number of sessions:	10 each for lpr and FTP

Standard sizes and drawing areas

Series	Standard size	Dimensions	Drawing area (dots)
ISO A series	A0	841 × 1,189 mm (33.12 x 46.77")	19,872 × 28,064
	A1	594 × 841 mm (23.36 x 33.12")	14,016 × 19,872
	A2	420 × 594 mm (16.53 x 23.36")	9,920 × 14,016
	A3	297 × 420 mm (11.68 x 16.53")	7,008 × 9,920
	A4	210 × 297 mm (8.26 x 11.68")	4,960 × 7,008
ISO B series	B1	707 x 1000 mm (27.83 x 39.37")	16698 x 23,622
	B2	500 x 707 mm (19.69 x 27.83")	11,814 x 23,622
	B3	353 x 500 mm (13.9 x 19.69")	8,340 x 11,814
	B4	250 x 353 mm (9.84 x 13.9")	5,904 x 8,340
SP. A	SP. A0	880 × 1,230 mm (34.65 x 48.43")	20,768 × 29,056
	SP. A1	625 × 880 mm (24.6 x 34.65") 620 × 871 mm (24.4 x 34.3")	14,752 × 20,768 14,624 x 20,576
	SP. A2	440 × 625 mm (17.3 x 24.6") 435 × 620 mm (17.1 x 24.4")	10,400 × 14,752 10,272 x 14,624
	SP. A3	312 × 440 mm (12.3 x 17.3") 310 × 435 mm (12.2 x 17.1")	7,360 x 10,400 7,328 x 10,272

Series	Standard size	Dimensions	Drawing area (dots)
ARCH	E	36 x 48 inches (914.4 x 1219.2 mm)	$21,600 \times 28,800$
	D	24 x 36 inches (609.6 x 914.4 mm)	14,400 x 21,600
	C	18 x 24 inches (457.2 x 609.6 mm)	$10,800 \times 14,400$
	B	12 x 18 inches (304.8 x 457.2 mm)	$7,200 \times 10,800$
	A	9 x 12 inches (228.6 x 304.8 mm)	$5,400 \times 7,200$
ANSI	E	34×44 inches (863.6 x 1117.6 mm)	20,400 x 26,400
	D	22×34 inches (558.8 x 863.6 mm)	13,200 x 20,400
	C	17×22 inches (431.8 x 558.8 mm)	10,200 x 13,200
	B	11×17 inches (279.4 x 421.8 mm)	6,600 x 10,200
	A	8.5×11 inches (215.9 x 279.4 mm)	5,100 x 6,600
ARCH 30	E30	30 x 42 inches (762 x 1,067 mm)	18,000 x 25,200
	D	24 x 36 inches (609 x 914.4 mm)	14,400 x 21,600
	C	18 x 24 inches (457 x 609 mm)	10,800 x 14,400
	B	12 x 18 inches (304 x 457 mm)	7,200 x 10,800
	A	9 x 12 inches (228 x 304 mm)	5,400 x 7,200

Print Length

- When the PS/PDF option is not in use

Paper Type	Paper Width	512MB (Standard)	1024MB (Extended)
Plain paper	A0	5,500mm	15,000mm
	A1	7,500mm	15,000mm
	A2	6,000mm	6,000mm
	A3	6,000mm	6,000mm
	36"	5,000mm	13,500mm
	24"	6,900mm	15,000mm
	18"	6,000mm	6,000mm
	12"	6,000mm	6,000mm
Vellum/Film	A0	2,380mm	2,380mm
	A1	1,680mm	1,680mm
	A2	1,190mm	1,190mm
	A3	840mm	840mm

- When the PS/PDF option is in use

Paper Type	Paper Width	512MB (Standard)	1024MB (Extended)
Plain paper	A0	3,500mm	12,000mm
	A1	5,000mm	15,000mm
	A2	6,000mm	6,000mm
	A3	6,000mm	6,000mm
	36"	3,000mm	11,500mm
	24"	5,000mm	15,000mm
	18"	6,000mm	6,000mm
	12"	6,000mm	6,000mm
Vellum/Film	A0	2,380mm	2,380mm
	A1	1,680mm	1,680mm
	A2	1,190mm	1,190mm
	A3	840mm	840mm

Frame memory - Maximum number of spools

Mounted frame memory	Configuration	Number of sheets				
		A0	A1	A2	A3	A4
512 MB	6030 Extended/6050 Standard	6	12	25	51	100
1 GB	6030/6050 Extended	14	28	56	112	222

(Note) *Frame memory - Maximum number of spools indicates the number of spools that are developed into bit map. The print entry data is spooled in the hard disk separately from the memories.*

14.2 Media Specifications

- For sharp image copying, use the media recommended by Xerox.
- To prevent media jams or uneven printing, do not use creased, wrinkled, or curled media.
- When using unusually flexible media, support the media as it comes out of the media ejection port so that it will not be pressed against the media table and result in jams.
- Moisture is not good for media. Place the media in a storage bag and store it in a relatively dry place.
  Vellum media, especially, should be put in a plastic or moisture-proof bag that contains desiccant.
- When the machine is not used for a long period, remove the media and store it appropriately.

Item	Description	
Media type/weight* *Weight range = Light to Heavy stock inclusive*	Bond	16 to 29lb. (60 to 112gsm)
	Vellum	18 to 29lb. (70 to 112gsm)
	Tracing Paper	24 to 29lb. (90 to 112 gsm)
	Film	50 to 100 microns (2 to 4 mil)
Size	Roll	Minimum width 297 mm, maximum width 914 mm (standard size paper)
	Manual loading [*1]	Minimum width 210 mm, maximum width 914 mm (standard size paper)
	M.S.I. [*2]	A3 (horizontal feed), A4 (portrait/landscape feed)
Recommended media	Bond (Roll)	Premium and Performance Bond (20lb./75gsm)
	Bond (Cut sheet)	Premium and Performance Bond (20lb./75gsm)
	Tracing Paper	Premium Tracing (24 to 29lb./90 to 112 gsm)
	Vellum (Roll) Vellum (Cut sheet)	HPH (18 to 29lb./70 to 112gsm) HPH (18 to 29lb./70 to 112gsm)
	Film (Roll) Film (Cut sheet)	Premium Film (100 micron/4 mil) Premium Film (100 micron/4 mil)

*1 Option
*2 A4 size can only be fed portrait.

14.3 Machine Specifications

Main Specifications

Item	Specification
Type	Desktop
Type of photo sensitive material	OPC
Recording method	LED exposure, xerographic development system
Development method	Dry development (one component)
Fixing method	Heat roll
Resolution	Equivalent to 600 dots/25.4 mm (600 dpi) $\times$ 1200 dots/25.4 mm (1200 dpi)
Tone	Input: 256 levels. Output: 2 levels (Area tone: 256 levels)
Warm-up time	Less than 3 minutes
Print size	Maximum: Width 914.4 mm/36" 　　　　　　　Length 15000 mm (15 m)/49.2' Minimum: Width 182 mm/7.16" 　　　　　　　Length 210 mm/8.26" Thickness: 0.05 to 0.2 mm
First copy output time	Less than 23 seconds (with A0 size document/100% copy)
First print output time	Less than 31 seconds (with A0 size)
Continuous copy	99 sheets maximum
Copy speed	A0 size:　5 sheets/min or higher (6050 Wide Format) A0 size:　3 sheets/min or higher (6030 Wide Format)
Scan length	Maximum: 15 m/49.2' (at 100% scaling)
Media feeding method	Auto paper feed from roll Manual media feed (option)
Media	Maximum width:　914 mm/36" (A0 size) Minimum width:　210 mm/8.27" (A4 size) Maximum length *: Plain media (A0/A1 width) 15 m/49.2', 　　　　　　　　　A2/A3 width 6 m/19.68' 　　　　　　　　　Vellum/Film: Twice standard size Minimum length:　210 mm/8.27"

Item	Specification	
Dimensions	Combination type	1,250 (W) × 640 (D) × 1,200 (H) mm (excluding control panel)
	Scanner	1,250 (W) × 625 (D) × 305 (H) mm
	(Including control panel)	1,420 (W) × 625 (D) × 415 (H) mm
	Printer	1,250 (W) × 640 (D) × 940 (H) mm
Weight	Scanner	50 kg
	Printer (2R type)	250 kg
	Printer (4R type)	300 kg
	Combination type (2R type)	300 kg
Maximum power consumption	Scanner	260 W
	Printer	3,200 W
Power consumption when main power switch is OFF	Main power switch OFF	0 W (printer)
	Scanner power switch OFF	0 W (scanner)
Heat dissipation	Maximum heat dissipation (printer)	
	Standby mode	1,800 kJ or less
	Copy mode	9,000 kJ or less
	Maximum heat dissipation (printer)	
	Standby mode	330 kJ or less
	Copy mode	710 kJ or less
Interface (scanner)	Ultra-Wide SCSI-II (68 pins)	
	Bit width:	16 bits
	Transfer mode:	Asynchronous and synchronous
	Transfer speed:	20 Mbps (peak in synchronous transfer)
	Maximum cable length:	5 m or less
	SCSI ID:	1

(Note) *No power is consumed in the output section and printer when the circuit breaker is OFF even if the power plug is connected to the power source.*

* Maximum length will differ based on the amount of memory installed.

Xerox 6030/6050 Wide Format

Amount of memory installed	A0 size	A1 size	A2 size	A3 size
512 Mbyte	7.5 m	7.5 m	6 m	6 m
1024 Mbyte	15 m	15 m	6 m	6 m

Appendixes

Appendix 1 Connector Specifications

RS-232C pin assignment

Host side	Controller side		Signal name	Wiring
	Straight cable	Cross cable		
1	1	7,8	CD	y
2	2	3	RD	y
3	3	2	TD	y
4	4	6	DTR	y
5	5	5	GND	y
6	6	4	DSR	y
7	7	1	RTS	y
8	8	1	CTS	y
9	9	-	RI	-

(Note) *[-] indicates no wiring. Both sides are male pins.*

Centronics pin assignment

Printer Side (36-pin Amphenol half-pitch type)

Terminal No.	Signal name	Terminal No.	Signal name	Pin connection
1	Busy	19	GND	
2	Select	20	GND	
3	nAck	21	GND	
4	nFault	22	GND	
5	Perror	23	GND	
6	Data 1	24	GND	
7	Data 2	25	GND	
8	Data 3	26	GND	
9	Data 4	27	GND	
10	Data 5	28	GND	
11	Data 6	29	GND	
12	Data 7	30	GND	
13	Data 8	31	GND	
14	nInit	32	GND	
15	nStrobe	33	GND	
16	nSelectIn	34	GND	
17	nAutoFd	35	GND	
18	-	36	Peripheral Logic High	

Host Side (36-pin Amphenol type)

Terminal No.	Signal name	Terminal No.	Signal name	Pin connection
1	nStrobe	19	GND	
2	Data 1	20	GND	
3	Data 2	21	GND	
4	Data 3	22	GND	
5	Data 4	23	GND	18 ---------------------------- 1
6	Data 5	24	GND	
7	Data 6	25	GND	
8	Data 7	26	GND	
9	Data 8	27	GND	
10	nAck	28	GND	
11	Busy	29	GND	
12	Perror	30	GND	36 ---------------------------- 19
13	Select	31	nInit	
14	nAutoFd	32	nFault	
15	-	33	-	
16	Logiv GND	34	-	
17	Chassis GND	35	-	
18	Peripheral Logic High	36	nSelectIn	

Host Side (25-pin D-subconnector type)

Terminal No.	Signal name	Terminal No.	Signal name	Pin connection
1	DATA • STB	14	NC	
2	DATA 1	15	FAULT	
3	DATA 2	16	NC	
4	DATA 3	17	NC	
5	DATA 4	18	GND	
6	DATA 5	19	GND	1 13
7	DATA 6	20	GND	14 25
8	DATA 7	21	GND	
9	DATA 8	22	GND	
10	ACK	23	GND	
11	BUSY	24	GND	
12	PE	25	GND	
13	SELECT			

Appendix 2 HP-GL/HP-GL2 Command List

This section explains the HP-GL and HP-GL/2 command support status that are unique to the 6030/6050 Wide Format.

y	Command fully supported.
y*	Activates different actims from other ordinary commands. (Meaning in [ ])
n	Command not supported and ignored.

Command List

The following table shows the HP-GL and HP-GL/2 command support status.

Com-mand	Command Meaning and action	HP-GL	HP-GL/2	6030/6050 Wide Format
AA	Plots a circle around a point specified by absolute coordinates.	y	y	y
AC	Specifies the starting point of a fill pattern.		y	y
AD	Specifies a substitute font for labels. [Only vector fonts supported]		y	y
AF	Feeds paper by one page. [Interpreted as output trigger]	y		y*
AH	Feeds paper by a half page. [Interpreted as output trigger]	y		y*
AP	Deselects pen cap timeout setting	y		n
AR	Plots a circle around a point specified by relative coordinates.	y	y	y
AS	Specifies the pen acceleration.	y		n
AT	Plots an arc linking three points specified by absolute coordinates. (start point - intermediate point - end point)		y	y
BL	Enters a specified character string into a buffer.	y		y
BP	Instructs the start of plotting. Outputs a label by overlaying on job log and plot output.		y	y

Com-mand	Command Meaning and action	HP-GL	HP-GL/2	6030/6050 Wide Format
CA	Sets an auxiliary character set.	y		y
CC	Specifies character smoothness.	y		n
CF	Specifies an outline font rendering method.		y	n
CI	Plots a circle of an arbitrary radius.	y	y	y
CM	Specifies the handling of character set modes and undefined characters.	y		n
CP	Draws a character.	y	y	y
CR	Sets an RGB data range.		y	y
CS	Sets a standard character set.	y		y
CT	Specifies an arc division method.	y	y	y
CV	Controls the curve line generator.	y		n
DC	Terminates the digitize mode.	y	y	n
DF	Resets the printer to the default status.	y	y	y
DI	Specifies the character string direction by absolute values.	y	y	y
DL	Downloads a user-defined character set.	y		y
DP	Reads the coordinates of a point to be digitized.	y	y	n
DR	Specifies the character string direction by relative values.	y	y	y
DS	Sets a character set to a slot.	y		n
DT	Defines character or code to terminate label drawing.	y	y	y
DV	Specifies a text path to the right or left or upward or downward.	y	y	y
EA	Draws a square determined by the current pen position and the specified X and Y coordinates.	y	y	y
EC	Cuts paper.	y	y	n
EP	Draws a polygon registered in the polygon buffer.	y	y	y
ER	Draws a square determined by the current pen position and relative coordinates from the point.	y	y	y
ES	Specifies the character spacing.	y	y	y
EW	Draws a sector.	y	y	y
FI	Specifies a font as the primary font.		y	n
FN	Specifies a font as the secondary font.		y	n

Command	Command Meaning and action	HP-GL	HP-GL/2	6030/6050 Wide Format
FP	Fills in a polygon registered in the polygon buffer.	y	y	y
FR	Feeds paper by one frame for long-axis plotting. [Interpreted as output trigger]	y	y	y*
FS	Specifies the pen pressure.	y		n
FT	Specifies a fill type.	y	y	y
GC	Sets a group count.	y		n
GM	Allocates the graphics memory.	y		n
GP	Groups specified pens.	y		n
IM	Sets each mask.	y		y
IN	Initializes the printer.	y	y	y
IP	Sets a scaling point.	y	y	y
IR	Establishes the positions of P1 and P2 about hard clip limits.		y	y
IV	Selects a character set from a slot.	y		n
IW	Sets a software window area.	y	y	y
KY	Assigns a function key on the front panel to a specific function.	y		n
LA	Specifies the line end and joint styles.		y	y
LB	Draws a character string.	y	y	y
LM	Sets the label mode to one or two bytes.		y	y
LO	Specifies a character drawing position.	y	y	y
LT	Specifies a line pattern (–7 to +6) for line plotting.	y	y	y
MC	Controls the pixel color when two or more graphics intersect.		y	n
MG	Displays a message on the control panel of the printer.		y	n
MT	Indicates the type of paper loaded on the printer.		y	y
NP	Sets the HPGL/2 palette size.		y	y
NR:	Sets the printer to local. [Interpreted as output trigger]	y	y	y*
OA	Outputs the current position on the printer coordinate system and the pen up-down information.	y		y

Com-mand	Command Meaning and action	HP-GL	HP-GL/2	6030/6050 Wide Format
OC	Outputs the current position instructed by the last command and the pen up-down information. [6030/6050 Wide Format: Always returns the standard value (0,0,0)]	y		y*
OD	Outputs read coordinates. [Always returns the standard value (0,0,0)]	y	y	y* (HP-GL) n (HP-GL/2)
OE	Outputs an error number.	y	y	y
OF	Outputs the number of printer units per millimeter.	y		y
OG	Outputs the current group count and group status.	y		n
OH	Outputs the coordinates of the mechanical limit area where the pen can be moved.	y	y	y
OI	Outputs the printer model.	y	y	y
OK	Outputs a pressed function key.	y		n
OL	Outputs the information (length) of a character string in the character buffer.	y		y
OO	Outputs an option number.	y		y
OP	Outputs a scaling point.	y	y	y
OS	Outputs a printer status.	y	y	y
OT	Outputs the current carousel type and stall occupancy status.	y		n
OW	Outputs a software window area.	y		y
PA	Moves the pen by absolute coordinates.	y	y	y
PB	Draws a character string in the character buffer.	y		y
PC	Defines the pen color and width.		y	y* (HP-GL) y (HP-GL/2)
PD	Lowers the pen.	y	y	y
PE	Executes PA, PR, PU, PD, and SP.		y	y
PG	Feeds the paper forward or backward.	y	y	y* (HP-GL) y (HP-GL/2)
PM	Registers a user-specified polygon in the polygon buffer.	y	y	y
PR	Moves the pen by relative coordinates.	y	y	y
PS	Specifies the paper size.	y	y	y (HP-GL) y* (HP-GL/2)

Com-mand	Command Meaning and action	HP-GL	HP-GL/2	6030/6050 Wide Format
PT	Specifies the fill spacing.	y		y
PU	Raises the pen.	y	y	y
PW	Specifies the pen width.		y	y
QL	Sets the plot quality.		y	n
RA	Fills in a square determined by the current pen position and the specified X and Y coordinates.	y	y	y
RF	Defines a pattern used for area filling.		y	y
RO	Rotates the coordinate system.	y	y	y
RP	Specifies the output count.		y	y
RR	Fills in a square determined by the current pen position and the relative coordinates from the point.	y	y	y
RT	Plots an arc from the current pen position to a point specified by two relative values.		y	y
SA	Selects an auxiliary character set.	y	y	y
SB	Specifies a font type for labels.		y	n
SC	Assigns a user unit value to a scaling point.	y	y	y
SD	Specifies the standard font for labels.		y	y
SG	Selects a pen group. [Interpreted as the SP command]	y		n
SI	Specifies the character size by absolute values.	y	y	y
SL	Specifies the slant for the characters.	y	y	y
SM	Draws a specified character after moving the pen.	y	y	y
SP	Specifies a pen type.	y	y	y
SR	Specifies the character size by relative values.	y	y	y
SS	Specifies a font specified by the SD command.	y	y	y
ST	Sets the plot quality.		y	n
SV	Selects a pattern type for vector and area filling.		y	n
TD	Specifies whether to execute the functions of control characters or to print the control characters at label drawing.		y	y
TL	Specifies transparency or opaque when white areas are overlaid.	y		y
TR	Specifies the length of ticks drawn on the coordinate axis.		y	y

Com-mand	Command Meaning and action	HP-GL	HP-GL/2	6030/6050 Wide Format
UC	Draws a user-defined character.	y		n
UF	Draws a user-defined fill pattern.	y		y
UL	Creates a specified line pattern.		y	y
VN	Inactivates the VA command.			n
VS	Specifies the drawing speed.	y		n
WD	Outputs a specified message to the panel.	y		n
WG	Defines and fills in a sector polygon.	y	y	y
WU	Specifies whether to express the pen width in millimeters or by percentage of the P1/P2 distance.		y	y
XT	Draws ticks on the X axis.	y		y
YT	Draws ticks on the Y axis.	y		y

Appendix 3 HP-RTL Command List

Command name	Command	Command Meaning and function	Limit
Enter HPGL/2 Mode	ESC % # B	Starts processing the following data as an HP-GL2 command.	Transfer color palette ignored
Enter PCL Mode	ESC % # A	Starts processing the following data as an HP-RTL command.	Transfer color palette ignored
Reset	ESC E	1. Outputs the data received so far. 2. Executes the HP-GL2 IN command. 3. Returns HP-RTL CAP to (0,0). 4. Sets the controller to the HP RTL parsing mode. 5. Terminates the raster mode.	Parameters not changed
Universal Exit Language/Start of PCL	ESC % #x|X	1. Outputs all data input before this command. 2. Returns the controller to the HP-GL2 or HP RTL parsing mode.	
Apple Talk Config	ESC & B # W[binary data]	Sets communication with the Apple Talk driver.	Not supported
Configure Image Data	ESC * v # W[data]	Sets up the controller as a color controller as follows. 1. Determine each index bit and creates a color palette. 2. Set a color model. 3. Set the pixel encoding mode. 4. Determines each RGB bit. 5. Sets a white/black value corresponding to RGB.	Other commands ignored, excluding the pixel encoding command
Set Red Parameter	ESC * v # a|A	Defines the red color configuration of the color palette.	Only concatenation command valid
Set Green Parameter	ESC * v # b|B	Defines the green color configuration of the color palette.	Only concatenation command valid
Set Blue Parameter	ESC * v # c|C	Defines the blue color configuration of the color palette.	Only concatenation command valid
Assign Color Index Number	ESC * v # i|I	Assigns a defined RGB parameter to an index number.	Index Number

Command name	Command	Command Meaning and function	Limit
Push/Pop Palette	ESC * p # P	Saves and restores palette information.	Ignored
Start Raster Graphics	ESC * r # a|A	Sets the controller to the raster mode and sets the start position and left margin of a graphic image.	
End Raster Graphics	ESC * r C	Indicates the end of raster graphic image transfer.	
Transfer Raster Data by Plane	ESC * b # V[data]	Transfer's the data of a specified byte. However, the CAP does not move to the next raster position. The plane pointer is updated but the row pointer is not.	Data skipped
Transfer Raster Data by Row/Block	ESC * b # W[data]	Transfer's the data of a specified byte as a line or as a block by the current compression method.	
Set Compression Method	ESC * b # m|M	Determines the compression method.	
Source Raster Width	ESC * r # s|S	Indicates the image width of succeeding raster data.	
Source Raster Height	ESC * r # t|T	Indicates the source raster image height of succeeding raster data.	
Move CAP Horizontal (Decipoint)	ESC & a # h|H	Moves the CAP horizontally by a specified decipoint (1/720 inch).	
Move CAP Horizontal	ESC * p # x|X	Moves the CAP horizontally by a specified value in Versatec resolution inch units.	
Move CAP Vertical	ESC * p # y|Y	Moves the CAP vertically by a specified value in Versatec resolution inch units.	
Y Offset	ESC * b # y|Y	Moves the CAP vertically by specified pixel rows.	
Destination Raster Width	ESC * t # h|H	Defines the raster output width for succeeding Start Graphic command by decipoint (1/720 inch).	
Destination Raster Height	ESC * t # v|V	Defines the raster output height for succeeding Start Graphic command by decipoint (1/720 inch).	

Command name	Command	Command Meaning and function	Limit
Raster Line Path	ESC * b # l/L	1. Indicates the vertical distance of an image updated by raster data submitted by the Row/Block command. 2. Indicates the vertical distance of the CAP moved by the Y Offset command. 3. Indicates the vertical distance of the CAP moved by the End Raster Graphics command (or equivalent command).	
Negative Motion	ESC & a # n|N	Defines the reverse output direction.	Ignored
Set Graphics Resolution	ESC * t # r|R	Defines the input image resolution.	
Simele Color	ESC * r # U	Creates a palette size table	Ignored
Render Algorithm	ESC * t # J	-	Ignored

Appendix 4 TIFF Tag List

Tag ID		Tag Name	Revision			6030/6050 Wide Format
Hex	Dec		4.0	5.0	6.0	
00FE	254	NewSubfileType	-	y	y	y*
		Bit 0: Low Resolution Image	-	y	y	-
		Bit 1: Multi-Page Image	-	y	y	y
		Bit 2: Transparency Mask	-	y	y	-
00FF	255	SubfileType	y	n	n	y*
		1: Full Resolution Image	y	n	n	y
		2: Reduced-Resolution Image	y	n	n	-
		3: Multi-Page Image	y	n	n	y
0100	256	ImageWidth	y	y	y	y
0101	257	ImageLength	y	y	y	y
0102	258	BitsPerSample	y	y	y	y
0103	259	Compression	y	y	y	y*
		1: uncompressed	y	y	y	y
		2: CCITT 1D (MH)	y	y	y	y
		3: CCITT T4 (MR)	y	y	y	y
		4: CCITT T6 (MMR)	y	y	y	y
		5: LZW	-	y	y	-
		6: JPEG	-	-	y	-
		32771: uncompressed	y	n	n	y
		32773: PackBits	y	y	y	y
0106	262	PhotometicInterpretation	y	y	y	y*
		0: WhiteIsZero	y	y	y	y
		1: BlackIsZero	y	y	y	y
		2: RGB	y	y	y	-
		3: RGB Palette	-	y	y	-
		4: Transparency Mask	-	-	y	-
		5: CMYK	-	-	y	-
		6: YCbCr	-	-	y	-

Tag ID		Tag Name	Revision			6030/6050 Wide Format
Hex	Dec		4.0	5.0	6.0	
		8: CIELab	-	-	y	-
0107	263	Thresholding	y	y	y	-
		1: No Dithering or Halftoning	y	y	y	-
		2: Dithering or Halftoning	y	y	y	-
		3: Randomized-Processed Image	y	y	y	-
0108	264	CellWidth	y	y	y	-
0109	265	CellWidth	y	y	y	-
010A	266	FillOrder	y	y	y	y
		1: MGB→ LSB	y	y	y	y
		2: LSB→ MGB	y	y	y	y
010D	269	DocumentName	y	y	y	y
010E	270	ImageDescriprion	y	y	y	y
010F	271	Make	y	y	y	y
0110	272	Model	y	y	y	y
0111	273	StripOffset	y	y	y	y
0112	274	Orientation	y	y	y	y
0115	277	SamplesPerPixel	y	y	y	y*
		1: Black/white binary value, grayscale, palette	y	y	y	y (Black/white binary value only)
		3: RGB	y	y	y	-
		4: CMYK	y	y	y	-
0116	278	RowsPerStrip	y	y	y	y
0117	279	StripByteCounts	y	y	y	y
0118	280	MinSampleValue	y	y	y	y
0119	281	MaxSampleValue	y	y	y	y
011A	282	XResolution	y	y	y	y
011B	283	YResolution	y	y	y	y
011C	284	PlanarConfiguration	y	y	y	y*
		1: Chunky Format (RGBRGB)	y	y	y	y
		2: Planar Format (RRGGBB)	y	y	y	-
011D	285	PageName	y	y	y	y

Tag ID		Tag Name	Revision			6030/6050 Wide Format
Hex	Dec		4.0	5.0	6.0	
011E	286	XPosition	y	y	y	y
011F	287	YPosition	y	y	y	y
0120	288	FreeOffsets	y	y	y	-
0121	289	FreeByteCounts	y	y	y	-
0122	290	GrayResponseUnit	y	y	y	-
0123	291	GrayResponseCurve	y	y	y	-
0124	292	T4Options	y	y	y	y*
		Bit 0: 2-dimensional Coding	y	y	y	-
		Bit 1: uncompressed mode	y	y	y	-
		Bit 2: add	y	y	y	y
		Other than Bit 1 and 2	y	y	y	-
0125	293	T6Options	y	y	y	-
		Bit 1: uncompressed mode	y	y	y	-
		Other than Bit 1	y	y	y	-
0128	296	ResolutionUnit	y	y	y	y
		1: No absolute unit	y	y	y	y
		2: Inch	y	y	y	y
		3: Centimeter	y	y	y	y
0129	297	PageNumber	y	y	y	y
012D	301	TransferFunction	-	-	y	-
0131	305	SoftWare	-	y	y	y
0132	306	DateTime	-	y	y	y
013C	315	HostComputer	-	y	y	y
013E	316	Predictor	-	y	y	-
013D	318	WhitePoint	-	y	y	-
013F	319	PrimaryChromaticties	-	y	y	-
0140	320	ColorMap	-	y	y	-
0141	321	HalftoneHints	-	-	y	-
0142	322	TileWidth	-	-	y	-
0143	323	TileLength	-	-	y	-
0144	324	TileOffsets	-	-	y	-

Tag ID		Tag Name	Revision			6030/6050 Wide Format
Hex	Dec		4.0	5.0	6.0	
0145	325	TileByteCounts	-	-	y	-
014C	332	InkSet	-	-	y	-
014D	333	InkNames	-	-	y	-
014E	334	NumberOfInks	-	-	y	-
0150	336	DotRange	-	-	y	-
0151	337	TargetPrinter	-	-	y	-
0152	338	ExtraSamples	-	-	y	-
0153	339	SampleFormat	-	-	y	-
		1: unsigned integer data	-	-	y	-
		2: 2's complement signed integer data	-	-	y	-
		3: IEEE formatting point	-	-	y	-
		4: undefined format data	-	-	y	-
0154	340	SMinSampleValue	-	-	y	-
0155	341	SMaxSampleValue	-	-	y	-
0156	342	TransferRange	-	-	y	-
0200	512	JPEGProc	-	-	y	-
		1: Baseline sequential	-	-	y	-
		14: Lossless	-	-	y	-
0201	513	JPEGInterchangeFormat	-	-	y	-
0202	514	JPEGInterchangeFormatLngth	-	-	y	-
0203	515	JPEGRestartInterval	-	-	y	-
0205	517	JPEGLossLessPredictors	-	-	y	-
0206	518	JPEGPointTransforms	-	-	y	-
0207	519	JPEGQTables	-	-	y	-
0208	520	JPEGDCTables	-	-	y	-
0209	521	JPEGACTables	-	-	y	-
0211	529	YCbCrCoefficients	-	-	y	-
0212	530	YCbCrSubSampling	-	-	y	-
0213	531	YCbCrPositioning	-	-	y	-
0214	532	ReferenceBlackWhite	-	-	y	-
8298	33432	Copyright	-	-	y	y

Symbols

A

B

C